

**htc one<sup>®</sup> (M8)**  
**harman/kardon<sup>®</sup> edition**

**User Guide**



# *Table of Contents*

---

|                                                                       |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Important Information .....                                           | xvi |
| Radio Frequency Exposure Operating Instructions .....                 | xvi |
| Important Note on Recoverable Data .....                              | xvi |
| Get Started .....                                                     | 1   |
| Your Phone at a Glance .....                                          | 1   |
| Charge Your Phone .....                                               | 2   |
| Activate Your Phone .....                                             | 3   |
| Complete the Setup Application .....                                  | 4   |
| Set Up Voicemail .....                                                | 5   |
| Transfer Content to Your New Phone .....                              | 6   |
| Transfer Content from an Android Phone .....                          | 6   |
| Transfer Content from an iPhone .....                                 | 7   |
| Transfer Content From Your Old Phone Using Bluetooth .....            | 7   |
| Transfer Content Between Your Phone and Computer .....                | 8   |
| Ways of Transferring Contacts and Other Content into Your Phone ..... | 8   |
| Restore Your Backup From Your Online Storage to Your New Phone .....  | 9   |
| Your Home Screen .....                                                | 10  |
| Sprint Account Information and Help .....                             | 10  |
| Sprint Account Passwords .....                                        | 10  |
| Manage Your Account .....                                             | 11  |
| Sprint Support Services .....                                         | 11  |
| Phone Basics .....                                                    | 13  |
| Your Phone's Layout .....                                             | 13  |
| Turn Your Phone On and Off .....                                      | 14  |
| Turn Your Screen On and Off .....                                     | 15  |
| Your Phone's Lock Screen .....                                        | 16  |
| Unlock the Screen .....                                               | 16  |
| Customize the Lock Screen .....                                       | 16  |
| Notification Widget .....                                             | 17  |
| Disable the Lock Screen .....                                         | 18  |

|                                                                 |    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Onscreen Navigation Buttons .....                               | 18 |
| Wake Up Phone Using Motion Launch.....                          | 18 |
| Make a Call with Quick Call .....                               | 21 |
| Turn Motion Launch On or Off .....                              | 22 |
| Motion Launch Troubleshooting.....                              | 22 |
| Touchscreen Navigation .....                                    | 23 |
| Motion Gestures .....                                           | 28 |
| Working with Phone Apps and Settings .....                      | 30 |
| Open an App .....                                               | 30 |
| Get to Know Your Settings.....                                  | 33 |
| Using Quick Settings .....                                      | 34 |
| HTC BlinkFeed - Your Dynamic Home Screen.....                   | 35 |
| Turn HTC BlinkFeed On or Off.....                               | 36 |
| Add Content to HTC BlinkFeed.....                               | 36 |
| Customize the Highlights Feed .....                             | 37 |
| Save Articles for Later .....                                   | 38 |
| Post to Your Social Networks .....                              | 38 |
| Remove Content From HTC BlinkFeed.....                          | 38 |
| Customize the Home Screen .....                                 | 38 |
| Change the Wallpaper .....                                      | 38 |
| Customize the Launch Bar.....                                   | 39 |
| Change Your Main Home Screen .....                              | 39 |
| Organize Your Widget Panels.....                                | 40 |
| Work with Widgets and App Shortcuts .....                       | 40 |
| Status and Notifications .....                                  | 42 |
| Status Bar.....                                                 | 42 |
| Notifications Panel.....                                        | 44 |
| Notification LED.....                                           | 46 |
| Capture the Phone Screen .....                                  | 46 |
| Enter Text .....                                                | 46 |
| HTC Sense Keyboard.....                                         | 46 |
| Enter Text by Typing on the HTC Sense Keyboard.....             | 47 |
| Enter Text with Word Prediction on the HTC Sense Keyboard ..... | 49 |

|                                                                         |    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Enter Text with the HTC Sense Keyboard Using the Trace Keyboard .....   | 50 |
| Enter Text by Speaking on the HTC Sense Keyboard .....                  | 50 |
| Swype Keyboard .....                                                    | 51 |
| Edit Text .....                                                         | 52 |
| Phone Calls .....                                                       | 54 |
| HD™ Voice .....                                                         | 54 |
| Make Phone Calls.....                                                   | 54 |
| Call Using Smart Dial.....                                              | 54 |
| Dial an Extension Number .....                                          | 55 |
| Return a Missed Call .....                                              | 56 |
| Call From Call History.....                                             | 56 |
| Call From People.....                                                   | 56 |
| Call Using a Speed Dial Number .....                                    | 57 |
| Call a Number in a Text Message, Email Message, or Calendar Event ..... | 57 |
| Call Emergency Numbers .....                                            | 57 |
| Make International Calls .....                                          | 58 |
| Set Up Speed Dial .....                                                 | 58 |
| Receive Phone Calls.....                                                | 59 |
| In-call Options.....                                                    | 59 |
| 3-way Calling .....                                                     | 60 |
| End a Call.....                                                         | 60 |
| Call Services.....                                                      | 60 |
| Caller ID .....                                                         | 61 |
| Call Waiting .....                                                      | 61 |
| Call Forwarding .....                                                   | 61 |
| Call History .....                                                      | 62 |
| Open Call History.....                                                  | 62 |
| Save a Number From Call History .....                                   | 63 |
| Prepend a Number From Call History .....                                | 63 |
| Block a Caller .....                                                    | 63 |
| Erase Call History .....                                                | 63 |
| Change Ringtone Settings .....                                          | 64 |
| Visual Voicemail .....                                                  | 64 |

|                                          |    |
|------------------------------------------|----|
| Set Up Visual Voicemail.....             | 65 |
| Review Visual Voicemail.....             | 65 |
| Voicemail (Traditional) .....            | 66 |
| Voicemail Notification .....             | 67 |
| Set Up Voicemail .....                   | 67 |
| Retrieve Your Voicemail Messages .....   | 67 |
| Internet Calls.....                      | 68 |
| Add an Internet Calling Account.....     | 68 |
| Make an Internet Call.....               | 68 |
| People .....                             | 70 |
| Your People List .....                   | 70 |
| Find People .....                        | 71 |
| Set Up Your Profile .....                | 71 |
| Add Entries to the People App .....      | 72 |
| Add a New People Entry.....              | 72 |
| Get In Touch with a Contact.....         | 73 |
| Manage People Entries.....               | 73 |
| Edit a People Entry .....                | 73 |
| Delete an Entry .....                    | 74 |
| Delete Multiple Entries .....            | 74 |
| Import or Copy Contacts .....            | 74 |
| Merge Entries in People.....             | 74 |
| Accept Contact Link Suggestions .....    | 75 |
| Manually Merge Entries .....             | 75 |
| Break the Link.....                      | 75 |
| Send Contact Information .....           | 75 |
| Contact Groups.....                      | 76 |
| Create a Group.....                      | 76 |
| Send a Message or Email to a Group ..... | 77 |
| Edit a Contact Group .....               | 77 |
| Manage Your Contact Groups .....         | 78 |
| Back Up and Restore Your Contacts .....  | 78 |
| Private Contacts .....                   | 79 |

|                                                            |    |
|------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Accounts and Messaging .....                               | 80 |
| Gmail .....                                                | 80 |
| Create a Google Account.....                               | 80 |
| Sign In to Your Google Account.....                        | 81 |
| View Your Gmail Inbox .....                                | 81 |
| Send a New Gmail Message .....                             | 83 |
| Reply To or Forward an Email Message .....                 | 83 |
| Add a Gmail Account .....                                  | 84 |
| Get Help with Gmail.....                                   | 84 |
| Email .....                                                | 84 |
| Add an Email Account .....                                 | 84 |
| Check Your Mail Inbox.....                                 | 85 |
| Organize Your Inbox.....                                   | 86 |
| Send an Email Message .....                                | 86 |
| Read and Reply to an Email Message .....                   | 87 |
| Save an Image in an Email Message.....                     | 87 |
| Save an Email Message in Tasks .....                       | 87 |
| Manage Email Messages.....                                 | 88 |
| Search Email Messages .....                                | 88 |
| Work with Exchange ActiveSync Email.....                   | 89 |
| Delete an Email Account.....                               | 90 |
| Use Smart Sync.....                                        | 90 |
| Change the Email Account Settings.....                     | 91 |
| Text Messaging and MMS .....                               | 93 |
| Send a Text Message (SMS) .....                            | 93 |
| Send a Multimedia Message (MMS) .....                      | 93 |
| Send a Group Message .....                                 | 95 |
| Save and Resume Composing a Draft Message .....            | 95 |
| Read and Reply to a Message.....                           | 96 |
| Receive Text Messages From Contacts Using an iPhone.....   | 97 |
| View and Save an Attachment from a Multimedia Message..... | 97 |
| Help Protect Your Messages .....                           | 98 |
| Block Unwanted Messages.....                               | 99 |

|                                                 |     |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Delete Messages and Conversations.....          | 99  |
| Back Up and Restore Your Text Messages .....    | 100 |
| Text and Multimedia Message Options .....       | 101 |
| Social Networking Accounts.....                 | 104 |
| Facebook.....                                   | 104 |
| Twitter.....                                    | 104 |
| Google+.....                                    | 104 |
| YouTube .....                                   | 104 |
| Apps and Entertainment.....                     | 107 |
| Get Apps.....                                   | 107 |
| Get Apps from Google Play .....                 | 107 |
| Sprint Zone .....                               | 108 |
| Download Apps from the Web .....                | 109 |
| Uninstall an App .....                          | 109 |
| Navigation.....                                 | 109 |
| HTC Car .....                                   | 109 |
| Google Maps .....                               | 111 |
| Scout .....                                     | 114 |
| Music .....                                     | 115 |
| Listen to Music.....                            | 115 |
| Make Your Music Sound Better .....              | 116 |
| Create and Work with Playlists .....            | 117 |
| Add a Song to the Queue .....                   | 118 |
| Update Album Covers and Artist Photos.....      | 119 |
| Set a Song as a Ringtone .....                  | 119 |
| Search for Lyrics, Music Videos, and More ..... | 120 |
| Google Play Music.....                          | 121 |
| Sprint Music Plus.....                          | 121 |
| TV.....                                         | 122 |
| Set Up the TV App.....                          | 122 |
| Use the EPG.....                                | 123 |
| Schedule TV Programs.....                       | 124 |
| Get Social on the TV App .....                  | 124 |

|                                                                            |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Watch On Demand Videos .....                                               | 125 |
| Check Scores, Stats, and More with Live Sports .....                       | 125 |
| Set Up Your Remote Control .....                                           | 126 |
| Customize the Remote Control Buttons .....                                 | 126 |
| Control Your TV with HTC Remote .....                                      | 127 |
| Control Your TV From the Notifications Panel.....                          | 127 |
| Google Play Movies & TV .....                                              | 128 |
| Connect to Your Home Entertainment System.....                             | 128 |
| About HTC Media Link HD.....                                               | 128 |
| Share Media on DLNA Devices .....                                          | 129 |
| HTC Connect.....                                                           | 129 |
| Kid Mode .....                                                             | 130 |
| Web and Data.....                                                          | 132 |
| Data Services General Information – Sprint Spark LTE and 3G Networks ..... | 132 |
| Sprint Spark LTE .....                                                     | 132 |
| Data Connection Status and Indicators.....                                 | 133 |
| Launch a Web Connection.....                                               | 133 |
| Turn the Data Connection On or Off .....                                   | 133 |
| Schedule When to Turn Data Connection Off .....                            | 133 |
| Manage Your Data Usage .....                                               | 134 |
| Wi-Fi .....                                                                | 135 |
| Turn Wi-Fi On and Connect to a Wireless Network.....                       | 135 |
| Prevent Notifications from Unsecured Wi-Fi Networks.....                   | 136 |
| Connect to a Wi-Fi Network via WPS.....                                    | 136 |
| Disconnect from a Wireless Network .....                                   | 136 |
| Virtual Private Networks (VPN) .....                                       | 137 |
| Add a VPN Connection.....                                                  | 137 |
| Connect to a VPN.....                                                      | 137 |
| Disconnect From a VPN .....                                                | 138 |
| Search for Information .....                                               | 138 |
| Perform Searches on the Web and Your Phone .....                           | 138 |
| Search the Web with Your Voice .....                                       | 138 |
| Set Search Options.....                                                    | 138 |



|                                                  |     |
|--------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Get Instant Information with Google Now.....     | 139 |
| Browse the Web .....                             | 141 |
| Open the Browser.....                            | 141 |
| Use Browser Tabs .....                           | 142 |
| Save Web Content For Later .....                 | 143 |
| Add and Manage Your Bookmarks .....              | 143 |
| Browsing History.....                            | 144 |
| Private Browsing.....                            | 145 |
| Set Browser Options.....                         | 145 |
| Use Google Chrome to Browse the Web .....        | 145 |
| Mobile Hotspot.....                              | 145 |
| Share Internet Connection via USB Tethering..... | 146 |
| Camera and Video .....                           | 147 |
| Get Started with the Camera.....                 | 147 |
| Take a Photo .....                               | 149 |
| Capture Better Photos .....                      | 150 |
| Record a Video .....                             | 151 |
| Duo Camera Tips.....                             | 152 |
| Take Continuous Camera Shots.....                | 153 |
| Use Zoe Camera .....                             | 154 |
| Take a Selfie.....                               | 155 |
| Improve Portrait Shots .....                     | 155 |
| Take a Panoramic Photo .....                     | 155 |
| Take a Pan 360 Photo .....                       | 156 |
| Use Dual Capture Mode .....                      | 156 |
| Use HDR .....                                    | 157 |
| Record Slow Motion Videos.....                   | 157 |
| Manually Adjusting Camera Settings .....         | 158 |
| Save Your Settings as a Camera Mode .....        | 159 |
| Change Camera and Video Settings.....            | 159 |
| Access Photos and Videos .....                   | 160 |
| View Photos and Videos Organized by Time .....   | 160 |
| View Photos and Videos by Album .....            | 160 |

|                                              |     |
|----------------------------------------------|-----|
| View Photos by Location.....                 | 161 |
| Find Matching Photos .....                   | 163 |
| Edit Your Photos.....                        | 163 |
| Duo Effects .....                            | 165 |
| Copy and Paste Photos .....                  | 169 |
| View Pan 360 Photos .....                    | 169 |
| Create an Animated Gif .....                 | 170 |
| Create an Action Sequence Shot.....          | 170 |
| Edit a Group Shot .....                      | 171 |
| Remove Unwanted Objects in a Photo .....     | 171 |
| Watch and Trim Videos .....                  | 172 |
| Change the Video Playback Speed .....        | 173 |
| Zoe™ .....                                   | 173 |
| Creating a Zoe in Gallery .....              | 173 |
| About the Zoe App.....                       | 174 |
| Tools and Calendar .....                     | 176 |
| Calendar .....                               | 176 |
| View the Calendar .....                      | 176 |
| Schedule or Edit an Event .....              | 177 |
| Choose Which Calendar to Show .....          | 177 |
| Share an Event (vCalendar) .....             | 178 |
| Accept or Decline a Meeting Invitation ..... | 178 |
| Dismiss or Snooze Reminders.....             | 179 |
| Calculator .....                             | 179 |
| Clock & Alarm .....                          | 180 |
| Set the Date and Time Manually.....          | 180 |
| Set an Alarm.....                            | 180 |
| Check the Weather .....                      | 180 |
| Scribble.....                                | 181 |
| Compose a Note.....                          | 181 |
| Create a Note for a Photo Blog.....          | 182 |
| Group Notes Into a Notebook .....            | 183 |
| Publish and Share a Note .....               | 184 |

|                                                     |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Online Storage.....                                 | 184 |
| Google Drive.....                                   | 184 |
| Dropbox.....                                        | 188 |
| Tasks.....                                          | 189 |
| Create a Task.....                                  | 189 |
| Manage Tasks.....                                   | 190 |
| Manage Task Lists.....                              | 190 |
| Voice Recorder.....                                 | 191 |
| Record Your Voice.....                              | 191 |
| HTC Sync Manager.....                               | 191 |
| Install HTC Sync Manager on a Windows Computer..... | 192 |
| Transfer iPhone Content to Your HTC Phone.....      | 192 |
| Get Help.....                                       | 193 |
| Bluetooth and NFC.....                              | 193 |
| Connect a Bluetooth Headset or Car Kit.....         | 193 |
| Reconnect a Headset or Car Kit.....                 | 194 |
| Disconnect From a Bluetooth Device.....             | 194 |
| Send Information Using Bluetooth.....               | 195 |
| Where Sent Information is Saved.....                | 196 |
| Receive Files Using Bluetooth.....                  | 196 |
| Use Bluetooth FTP Server.....                       | 197 |
| Share Content with NFC.....                         | 198 |
| microSD Card.....                                   | 199 |
| Insert the microSD Card.....                        | 199 |
| Remove the microSD Card.....                        | 200 |
| Check the microSD Card Memory.....                  | 201 |
| Erase the microSD Card.....                         | 201 |
| Unmount the microSD Card.....                       | 201 |
| Update Your Phone.....                              | 201 |
| Prepare for a Phone Update.....                     | 202 |
| Update the Operating System.....                    | 203 |
| Update Your Profile.....                            | 203 |
| Update Your PRL.....                                | 203 |

|                                                                       |     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Sprint Worldwide Wireless Service.....                                | 204 |
| Activate Sprint Worldwide Service on Your Account .....               | 204 |
| Your Phone's SIM Card for International GSM Roaming.....              | 204 |
| Enable Global Roaming Mode .....                                      | 205 |
| Make and Receive Worldwide Calls.....                                 | 205 |
| Sprint International Voicemail Service.....                           | 206 |
| Set Up Your Voicemail Access Number for International Use .....       | 206 |
| Access Your Voicemail Internationally .....                           | 206 |
| International Voicemail Troubleshooting .....                         | 207 |
| International Data Roaming .....                                      | 207 |
| Get Started With Sprint Worldwide Data Services.....                  | 207 |
| Access Email and Data Services on GSM/UMTS Networks.....              | 208 |
| Access Email and Data Services Internationally on CDMA Networks ..... | 208 |
| International Roaming Status Messages.....                            | 208 |
| Contact Sprint for Assistance with International Service .....        | 210 |
| Settings.....                                                         | 212 |
| Wireless & Networks Settings .....                                    | 212 |
| Airplane Mode .....                                                   | 212 |
| Wi-Fi Settings .....                                                  | 212 |
| Bluetooth Settings.....                                               | 212 |
| Mobile Data Settings.....                                             | 213 |
| Media Output Settings .....                                           | 213 |
| More Wireless & Network Settings.....                                 | 213 |
| Personalize Settings .....                                            | 213 |
| Customize the Home and Lock Screen Settings .....                     | 213 |
| Ringtone .....                                                        | 214 |
| Notification Sound.....                                               | 214 |
| Alarm .....                                                           | 214 |
| Accounts & Sync.....                                                  | 214 |
| Add Your Social Networks, Email Accounts, and More .....              | 215 |
| Add an Exchange ActiveSync Account .....                              | 215 |
| Add Email Accounts.....                                               | 215 |
| Add One or More Google Accounts .....                                 | 215 |

|                                                          |     |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Manage Your Online Accounts .....                        | 216 |
| Location Settings .....                                  | 217 |
| Location Setting .....                                   | 217 |
| Google's Location Reporting.....                         | 217 |
| Security Settings.....                                   | 217 |
| Screen Lock Settings .....                               | 218 |
| Bypass the Lock Screen .....                             | 219 |
| Lock Screen and Password Settings.....                   | 219 |
| Allow Installation of Third-Party Programs .....         | 220 |
| Work with Certificates .....                             | 220 |
| Accessibility Settings .....                             | 221 |
| Navigate Your Phone with TalkBack.....                   | 221 |
| Backup and Reset .....                                   | 224 |
| Backup .....                                             | 224 |
| Reset Your Phone .....                                   | 227 |
| Get Content From Another Phone.....                      | 228 |
| Display & Gestures Settings .....                        | 228 |
| Auto-rotate Screen.....                                  | 228 |
| Font Style .....                                         | 229 |
| Font Size .....                                          | 229 |
| Brightness .....                                         | 229 |
| Screen Timeout (Sleep).....                              | 229 |
| Daydream .....                                           | 230 |
| Notification Light .....                                 | 230 |
| Media Gesture .....                                      | 230 |
| Motion Launch Gestures.....                              | 230 |
| Calibrate the Screen .....                               | 231 |
| Harman/Kardon Audio Setting .....                        | 231 |
| Sound Settings .....                                     | 231 |
| General Sound Settings - Sound Profile and Vibrate ..... | 231 |
| General Sound Settings - Volumes.....                    | 232 |
| Do Not Disturb Mode .....                                | 232 |
| Incoming Calls - Ringtone.....                           | 233 |

|                                                        |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Incoming Calls - Other Options .....                   | 234 |
| Notifications and Alarms .....                         | 234 |
| System Sound Settings .....                            | 234 |
| Call Settings .....                                    | 235 |
| Voicemail Settings .....                               | 235 |
| Hearing Aids .....                                     | 235 |
| CDMA Call Settings .....                               | 235 |
| Internet Call Settings .....                           | 236 |
| Other Call Settings.....                               | 236 |
| Apps Settings.....                                     | 237 |
| Uninstall Third-party Apps.....                        | 237 |
| Clear Application Cache and Data .....                 | 237 |
| Storage Settings .....                                 | 237 |
| Types of Storage .....                                 | 237 |
| Copy Files To or From Your Phone .....                 | 238 |
| Make More Storage Space .....                          | 238 |
| Encrypt Data on Your Phone .....                       | 239 |
| Power Settings.....                                    | 240 |
| Optimize Battery Life with Power Saver Mode .....      | 240 |
| Use Extreme Power Saving Mode .....                    | 240 |
| Check Battery Usage .....                              | 241 |
| Check Battery History .....                            | 241 |
| Display the Battery Percentage.....                    | 241 |
| Battery Saving Tips.....                               | 241 |
| Language & Keyboard Settings .....                     | 243 |
| Change the Phone Language .....                        | 243 |
| Spell Checker .....                                    | 244 |
| Keyboard and Input Methods - Google Voice Typing ..... | 244 |
| Keyboard and Input Methods - HTC Sense Input.....      | 244 |
| Keyboard and Input Methods - Swype .....               | 245 |
| Speech Settings .....                                  | 245 |
| Date & Time Settings .....                             | 245 |
| Printing .....                                         | 246 |

|                            |     |
|----------------------------|-----|
| Activate This Device ..... | 246 |
| System Updates .....       | 246 |
| About Your Phone .....     | 247 |
| Proprietary Notices .....  | 248 |
| Index.....                 | 250 |

## *Important Information*

---

### *Radio Frequency Exposure Operating Instructions*

This device was tested for compliance with the applicable FCC and Industry Canada specific absorption rate (SAR) limits for radio frequency (RF) exposure during typical body-worn operations. To ensure that RF exposure levels remain at or below the tested levels, use a belt-clip, holster, or similar accessory that maintains a minimum separation distance of 1.0 cm between your body and the device, with either the front or back of the device facing towards your body. Such accessories should not contain any metallic components. Body-worn accessories that do not meet these specifications may not ensure compliance with applicable SAR limits and their use should be avoided.

### *Important Note on Recoverable Data*

Files and other data that have been deleted, cleared, removed, or erased from your device may still be recoverable by third-party data recovery software. Even a factory reset may not permanently erase all data from your phone, including personal information.



# Get Started

This section gives you all the information you need to set up your phone and Sprint service the first time.

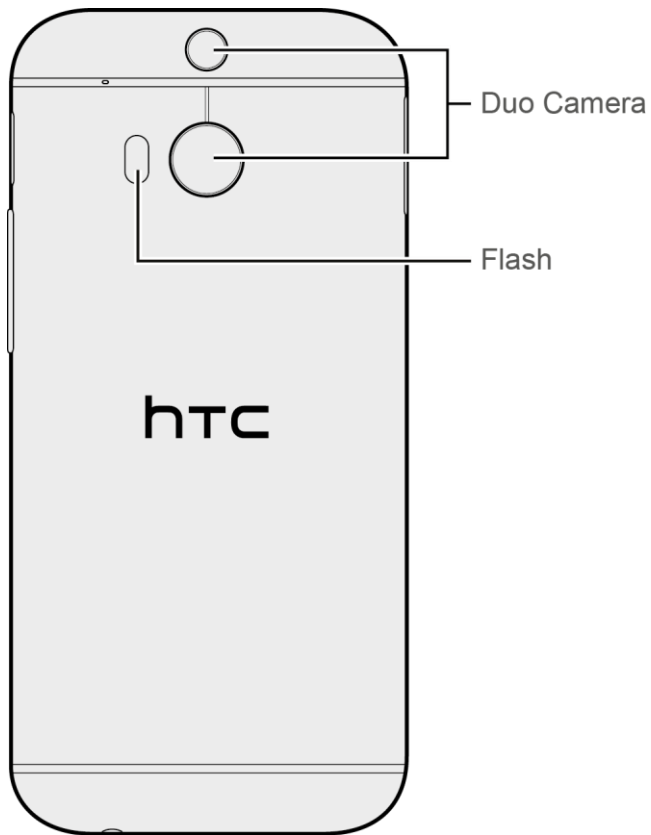
## Your Phone at a Glance

The following illustrations outline your phone's primary external features, keys, and buttons.

### Front Panel



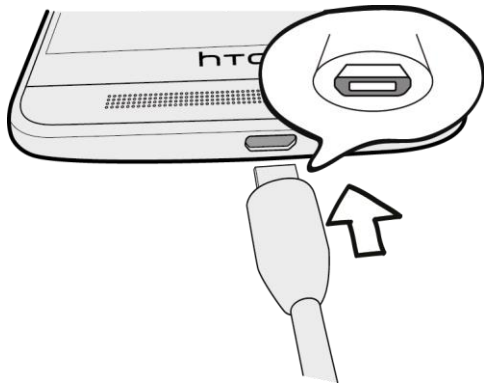
## Back Panel



## *Charge Your Phone*

Your phone's battery should have enough charge for the device to turn on and find a signal, run the setup application, set up voicemail, and make a call. You must fully charge the battery to begin setting up your phone.

1. Plug one end of the USB cable into the AC adapter.
2. Plug the other end of the USB cable into the Charger/Accessory Jack on the bottom panel of your phone.



3. Plug the AC adapter into an electrical outlet. Fully charging a battery may take up to three hours.

**Note:** Use only the adapter and the USB cable that came with your phone to charge the battery. When the battery power is too low, make sure to use the power adapter to charge, not the USB cable connection with your computer.

**Note:** As a safety precaution, the battery may stop charging to avoid overheating.

**Note:** When you're using the Internet and charging the battery, your phone may become warmer. This is normal.

**Note:** To conserve energy, unplug the power adapter from the electrical outlet after you finish charging.

## Activate Your Phone

Follow the instructions below to activate your phone if it has not already been activated. Depending on your account or how and where you purchased your phone, it may be ready to use or you may need to activate it on your Sprint account.

- If you purchased your phone at a Sprint Store, it is probably activated and ready to use.
- If you received your phone in the mail and it is for a new Sprint account or a new line of service, it is designed to activate automatically.
  - When you turn the phone on for the first time and start the setup application, you should see a **Hands Free Activation** screen, which may be followed by a **PRL Update** screen and a **Firmware Update** screen. Follow the onscreen instructions to continue.
- If you received your phone in the mail and you are activating a new phone for an existing number on your account (you're swapping phones), you can activate on your computer online or directly on your phone.
  - Activate on your computer:

- Go to [sprint.com/activate](http://sprint.com/activate) and complete the online instructions to activate your phone
- Activate on your phone:
  - Turn on your new phone. (Make sure the old one is turned off.) Your phone will automatically attempt Hands-Free Activation.
  - Touch **Activate** to override auto-activation and start the manual activation wizard.
  - Follow the on-screen prompts to complete the activation process.

To confirm activation, make a phone call. If your phone is still not activated, visit [sprint.com/support](http://sprint.com/support) for assistance. If you do not have access to the Internet, call Sprint Customer Service at **1-888-211-4727** from another phone.

**Tip:** Do not press the **Power** button while the phone is being activated. Pressing the **Power** button cancels the activation process.

**Note:** If you are having any difficulty with activation, visit [sprint.com/support](http://sprint.com/support).

## *Complete the Setup Application*

Walk through the on-device setup to choose your phone language, Internet connection, select how you want to set up your new phone, and more.

1. Touch **START** to begin.
  - Touch **NEXT** or **SKIP** to skip any of the screens.
2. Follow the onscreen instructions to complete each section. For each topic, you will have the option to skip it and continue to the next screen.
  - **Hands Free Activation.** See [Activate Your Phone](#).
  - **Connect to Wi-Fi.** Connect to a Wi-Fi® network. For more information, see [Wi-Fi](#).
  - **Got Google?** Sign in to your Google® Account. If you don't have a Google Account, see [Create a Google Account](#).

**Note:** You do not need to sign up for a Google Account to use your phone. However, to download apps from the Google Play™ Store or chat in Google+™ Hangouts™, you must link your phone to a Google Account.

- **Fast and easy setup.** Use the HTC Get Started service to set up your accounts and personalize your new phone from your computer. Your phone shows you the URL of the HTC Get Started site and a pair code. On your computer's Web browser, just go to the URL and enter the pair code to start your Web setup. You need an HTC

Account to save your accounts and settings on the Web and download them to your phone. To find out more about HTC Get Started and HTC Account, see the Help and FAQ on the HTC Get Started site: [start.htcsense.com](http://start.htcsense.com).

- **Transfer or restore.** If you want to transfer content from an old phone to your new HTC phone, choose **Get content from old phone** and touch **NEXT**. See [Transfer Content to Your New Phone](#).

Or if you want to restore your apps and settings from a backup you've created in your online storage, select **Restore from HTC Backup**, and touch **NEXT**. See [Restore Your Backup From Your Online Storage to Your New Phone](#).

- **Accounts & sync.** Set up your email and social network accounts including Google, Microsoft® Exchange ActiveSync®, Mail, HTC Account, Facebook, Flickr®, LinkedIn®, Outlook.com, Twitter, and Instagram. For more information, see [Accounts & Sync](#).
- **Personalize & Secure.** Give your new phone a name or set up a screen lock to help secure your phone.
- **HTC Backup.** This screen shows apps, social accounts, contacts, and more that you've backed up to your online storage. For more information, see [Backup](#).
- **Tell HTC & location services.** Choose whether to allow HTC to collect anonymous data in the background about how you use your phone. Scroll down the screen to view and enable location services. For more information, see [Location Setting](#) and [Google's Location Reporting](#).

3. Touch **FINISH**.

**Note:** Some features that need to connect to the Internet such as location-based services and auto-sync of your online accounts may incur extra data fees. To avoid incurring data fees, disable these features under Settings.

## Set Up Voicemail

Your phone automatically transfers all unanswered calls to your voicemail, even if your phone is in use or turned off. You should set up your Sprint voicemail and personal greeting as soon as your phone is activated. Always use a password to help protect against unauthorized access.

1. Touch  > . (If your screen is locked, press the **Power** button to turn on the display and then drag  up to unlock the screen.)
2. Touch and hold   to dial your voicemail number.
3. Follow the system prompts to:
  - Create your password.

- Record your name announcement.
- Record your greeting.

**Note: Voicemail Password** – Sprint strongly recommends that you create a password when setting up your voicemail to help protect against unauthorized access. Without a password, anyone who has access to your phone is able to access your voicemail messages.

## *Transfer Content to Your New Phone*

You can easily transfer content, contacts, messages, calendar events, music, photos, videos, and more from other phones or your computer to your new phone using the HTC Transfer Tool, Bluetooth®, or direct USB connection.

### *Transfer Content from an Android Phone*

On your old Android™ phone, download the HTC Transfer Tool and use it to transfer your content to your new HTC phone. The types of locally stored content on your old phone that the tool can transfer include contacts, messages, calendar events, Web bookmarks, music, photos, and videos. Some settings can also be transferred.

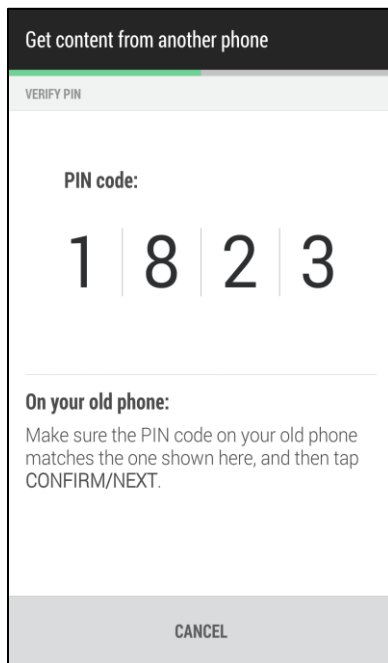
**Note:** You need Android version 2.2 or later to use the HTC Transfer Tool on your old phone.

**Note:** If your old phone has Android version 2.1 or an earlier version, you need to use Bluetooth transfer. For details, see [Transfer Content From Your Old Phone Using Bluetooth](#).

1. If you're setting up your new HTC phone for the first time, select **Get content from old phone** and touch **NEXT**.

Or with two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Get content from another phone**.

2. Choose whether to transfer from an old HTC Android phone or other Android phone.
3. Touch **Full transfer**, and then touch **NEXT**.
4. Follow the steps shown on your new phone to download and install the HTC Transfer Tool from Google Play to your old phone, install it, and open the tool.
5. When you see a PIN on your old phone, make sure the same PIN also appears on your new phone before you continue.



**Note:** If the PIN code doesn't appear, this may mean that your old phone is unable to connect to your new phone. If this happens, touch **Try another transfer method** on your new phone to use Bluetooth for transferring contacts from your old phone.

6. On your old phone, choose the types of content you want to transfer, and then touch **Start** or **Transfer**.
7. Wait for the transfer to finish.
8. Touch **Done** on both phones.

## *Transfer Content from an iPhone*

If you have an iPhone®, it's fast and easy to transfer your contacts, messages, and other content when you use HTC Sync Manager. For details, see [Transfer iPhone Content to Your HTC Phone](#).

If you only need to migrate your contacts, you can also use Bluetooth transfer. For details, see [Transfer Content From Your Old Phone Using Bluetooth](#).

## *Transfer Content From Your Old Phone Using Bluetooth*

Use Bluetooth to transfer contacts from an iPhone, a phone that has Android version 2.1 (or earlier version), or other types of phones.

Depending on the capabilities of your old phone, you may be able to transfer not only contacts but also other data such as calendar events and text messages to your new HTC phone.

**Tip:** Use [HTC Sync Manager](#) to transfer more types of content from an iPhone. For details, see [Transfer iPhone Content to Your HTC Phone](#).

1. If you're setting up your new HTC phone for the first time, select **Get content from old phone** and touch **NEXT**.  
  
Or with two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Get content from another phone**.
2. Choose whether to transfer from an Android phone, iPhone, or other phone types. If you chose to transfer from an Android phone, touch **Quick transfer**.
3. On your old phone, turn Bluetooth on and set it to discoverable mode.
4. Follow the onscreen instructions on your old and new phones to pair them and start the data transfer.

## *Transfer Content Between Your Phone and Computer*

There are two ways you can transfer content to or from your computer.

- **Connect your phone to your computer.** Your computer will recognize it just like any removable USB drive, and you can copy your media between them.
- **Download and use the HTC Sync Manager software on your computer.** You can set it up to automatically get music, photos, and videos off your phone to your computer. You can also sync playlists from your computer to the phone.

If you have an iPhone, you can even connect it and transfer the camera roll (photos and videos) to your computer. Then reconnect your phone and copy them over. For details, see [HTC Sync Manager](#).

Tired of keeping copies of your media in several places? Use online storage services to put your media in one place so you can manage them anywhere — on your computer, phone, and other mobile devices.

Go to Settings, and then touch **Accounts & sync** >  to check first what online storage accounts are available on your phone. Sign in to the one you want to use and then use the Gallery app to access media in your online storage.

## *Ways of Transferring Contacts and Other Content into Your Phone*

There are different ways you can individually add contacts and other content to your new HTC phone.

- **Sync with your computer.** Use HTC Sync Manager to sync contacts, documents, playlists, and more between your phone and a computer running a Windows® or Mac



OS® operating system. You can also use it to transfer iTunes® backup that contains contacts, messages, and other content from an iPhone to your computer, and then to your HTC phone. For details, see [HTC Sync Manager](#).

- **Google Account.** Google contacts are imported to your phone after you sign in to your Google Account. You can also create more Google contacts right from your phone.
- **Social network accounts.** Log in to your favorite social networks to sync contact information from them.
- **Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync.** Your phone syncs your work contacts from the Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync Server in your workplace.
- **Phone contacts.** You can create contacts locally on your phone, if you don't prefer to store them on your online accounts.

## *Restore Your Backup From Your Online Storage to Your New Phone*

If you used HTC Backup before, you can restore your backup to your new HTC phone when you turn the phone on for the first time or after a factory reset.

**Important:** Depending on the amount of content, restoring your backup to your phone through your data connection may use a lot of time and data. Using a Wi-Fi connection is recommended.

1. When you're asked whether you have a Google® Account, sign in to your account.
2. Use your mobile data or Wi-Fi connection to connect your phone to the Internet.

If you used your Google login credentials as your HTC Account and your backup is in Google Drive™, touch **Sign in with Google**.

If not, touch **Remind me later**, go to the Transfer or restore screen, and select **Restore from HTC Backup**.

3. Follow the onscreen instructions to restore your backup and to continue setting up your phone.
4. Slide open the Notifications panel to check if there's any notification to finish setting up your phone.

Your free apps that you've previously downloaded from Google Play will be restored in the background, and you can track the progress via a notification in the status bar. To restore paid apps, you need to download and install them from Google Play.

Your apps will appear on the Apps screen as they are installed. The Apps and Home screen shortcuts will be reorganized as in your backup after all of your apps have been installed. You may continue using your phone while apps are being restored.

## *Your Home Screen*

After you've turned on and set up your phone, you'll see HTC BlinkFeed™.

- Customize HTC BlinkFeed to show posts from your social networks, headlines from your favorite news media, and more. For details, see [HTC BlinkFeed - Your Dynamic Home Screen](#).
- Swipe left and you'll discover widget panels for adding your favorite widgets, apps, and more so they're just a touch away. And if you need more room for your stuff, you can add more widget panels. For details, see [Customize the Home Screen](#).
- You can change the apps on the launch bar at the bottom of the Home screen. See [Customize the Launch Bar](#).

**Tip:** While you're in another screen or app, touch  to return to the last Home screen you visited.

## *Sprint Account Information and Help*

Find out about account passwords and information about managing your account and finding help.

### *Sprint Account Passwords*

You will need to create passwords to help protect access to your personal account information, your voicemail account, and your data services account. As a Sprint customer, you enjoy unlimited access to all your information.

#### **Account User Name and Password**

If you are the account owner, you will create an account user name and password when you sign on to [sprint.com/mysprint](http://sprint.com/mysprint). (Click **Sign in/Register** and then click **Sign up now!** to get started.) If you are not the account owner (if someone else receives the bill for your Sprint service), you can get a sub-account password at [sprint.com/mysprint](http://sprint.com/mysprint).

#### **Voicemail Password**

You'll create your voicemail password when you set up your voicemail. See [Set Up Voicemail](#) for more information on your voicemail password.

## Data Services Password

With your Sprint phone, you may elect to set up an optional data services password to control access and authorize purchases.

For more information, or to change your passwords, sign on to [sprint.com/mysprint](https://sprint.com/mysprint) or call Sprint Customer Service at **1-888-211-4727**.

## Manage Your Account

Manage your Sprint account from your computer, your Sprint phone, or any other phone.

**Online:** [sprint.com/mysprint](https://sprint.com/mysprint)

- Access your account information.
- Check your minutes used (depending on your Sprint service plan).
- View and pay your bill.
- Enroll in Sprint online billing and automatic payment.
- Purchase accessories.
- Shop for the latest Sprint phones.
- View available Sprint service plans and options.
- Learn more about data services and other products like games, ringtones, screen savers, and more.

## From Your Sprint Phone

1. Touch  > . (If your screen is locked, press the **Power** button to turn on the display and then drag  up to unlock the screen.)
2. Do any of the following:
  - Touch  **4**  **CALL** to check minute usage and account balance.
  - Touch  **3**  **CALL** to make a payment.
  - Touch  **2**  **CALL** to access a summary of your Sprint service plan or get answers to other questions.

## Sprint Support Services

Sprint 411 and Sprint Operator Services let you easily access information and calling assistance from your Sprint phone.

## Sprint 411

Sprint 411 gives you access to a variety of services and information, including residential, business, and government listings; movie listings or show times; driving directions, restaurant reservations, and major local event information. You can get up to three pieces of information per call, and the operator can automatically connect your call at no additional charge.

There is a per-call charge to use Sprint 411, and you will be billed for airtime.

- Touch  > , and then touch    .

## Sprint Operator Services

Sprint Operator Services provides assistance when you place collect calls or when you place calls billed to a local telephone calling card or third party.

- Touch  > , and then touch  .

For more information or to see the latest in products and services, visit us online at [sprint.com/mysprint](http://sprint.com/mysprint).

# Phone Basics

Your phone is packed with features that simplify your life and expand your ability to stay connected to the people and information that are important to you. The topics in this section will introduce the basic functions and features of your phone.

## Your Phone's Layout

The illustrations below outline your phone's basic layout.



- **Dual Speakers** let you hear sounds when you're playing music, watching videos, and listening to different ringtones and sounds on your phone. The top speaker is also the earpiece that lets you hear the caller and automated prompts.
- **Charger/Accessory Jack** allows you to connect the phone charger or the USB cable (included).

**CAUTION!** Inserting an accessory into the incorrect jack may damage the phone.

- **3.5 mm Headset Jack** plug in the premium harman/kardon® AE-S in-ear headphones that are included in the box.
- **Touchscreen** lets you view and control all the features of your phone.
- **Volume Button** allows you to adjust the ringer or media volume or adjust the voice volume during a call.
- **microSD Card Tray with Eject Hole** allows installation of a microSD™ card for additional storage. The microSD card is sold separately. See [microSD Card](#).
- **Proximity Sensor** turns off the screen automatically when you place the phone near your face.

**Important:** If you want to use a case protector, please don't cover and block the proximity sensor. Purchase a screen protector designed for your phone.

- **Front Camera** allows you to take photos and videos or start a video call.
- **Power Button and IR Port** lets you turn the phone on or off, turn the screen on or off, restart the phone, or switch your phone to airplane mode. Under the **Power** button is an IR port that lets you use the TV app and your phone as remote control for your TVs, cable boxes, and home entertainment systems.
- **Front Indicator Light (LED)** shows your phone's status or pending notifications at a glance.
- **Nano SIM Card Tray with Eject Hole** holds the preinstalled Sprint 4G LTE™ nano SIM card. See [Your Phone's SIM Card for International GSM Roaming](#).

## Turn Your Phone On and Off

The instructions below explain how to turn your phone on and off, or how to restart the phone.

### Turn Your Phone On

- Press and hold the **Power** button () at the top of the phone.

You will feel or hear the phone vibrate when it has been turned on. The first time you turn on your phone, it will search for Sprint service, and begin the setup application.

### Turn Your Phone Off

1. Press and hold the **Power** button to open the Power options menu.

**Note:** When the screen is locked and you press the **Power** button it will only turn off the screen and not the phone. You will need to unlock the screen first before you press and hold the **Power** button to turn the phone off. See [Turn Your Screen On and Off](#) for details.

2. Touch **Power off** to turn the phone off.

## Restart Your Phone

Restarting the phone will close all running apps and will clear all temporary files in the phone's memory. Make sure to save your work before restarting the phone.

1. Press and hold the **Power** button for about two seconds.
2. On the Power options menu, touch **Restart**.
3. In the Restart phone confirmation box, touch **RESTART**.

**Note:** If the phone or touchscreen becomes unresponsive, press and hold the **Power** button for about 12 seconds to restart the phone.

## Turn Your Screen On and Off

Your phone allows you to quickly turn the screen off when not in use and to turn it back on and unlock it when you need it.

### Turn the Screen Off When Not in Use

- To turn the screen off, quickly press the **Power** button. Pressing the **Power** button again or receiving an incoming call will turn on your phone screen and show the lock screen.

To save battery power, the phone automatically turns off the screen after a certain period of time when you leave it idle. You will still be able to receive messages and calls while the phone's screen is off.

**Note:** For information on how to adjust the time before the screen turns off, see [Screen Timeout \(Sleep\)](#).

### Turn the Screen On and Unlock It

Below are steps for how to unlock your phone's screen.

- Press the **Power** button to turn the screen on.
- Use Motion Launch™ to wake up and unlock your phone directly to an app or screen. See [Wake Up Phone Using Motion Launch](#).

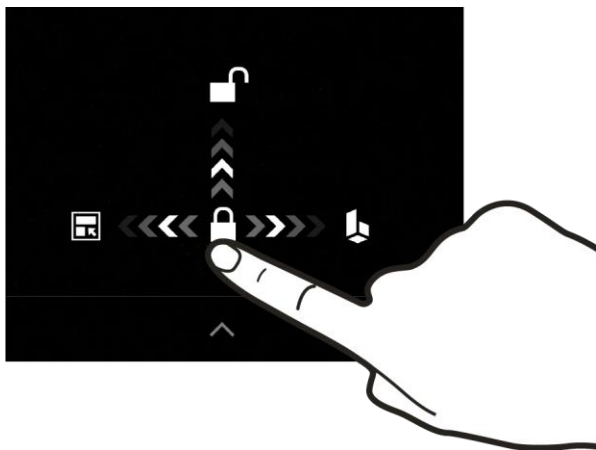
## Your Phone's Lock Screen

Aside from protecting the phone's screen from unwanted touches and presses, the lock screen also displays important information, updates, and messages at a glance, and provides shortcuts to your favorite applications.

### Unlock the Screen

Unlock the screen to receive an incoming call or to access your phone.

1. When the screen is off, press the **Power** button to show the lock screen.
2. You can either:
  - Swipe up to unlock the screen, swipe right to go directly to HTC BlinkFeed™, or swipe left to go to the Home widget panel.
  - You can also press and hold the lock icon (🔒), and then drag it up, right, or left.



- Flick a shortcut icon up to directly launch the app.

If you have set up a screen lock, you'll be asked to provide your credentials before your phone unlocks. See [Screen Lock Settings](#).

**Tip:** If you've set an event reminder or an alarm, you can snooze or dismiss the event or alarm right from the lock screen. Just drag 🕒 or ❌ up.

### Customize the Lock Screen

You can customize the lock screen.

#### Change the Lock Screen Wallpaper

Use the home wallpaper, or use any photo you've taken with the camera as the lock screen wallpaper.



1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Personalize**.
2. Touch **Lock screen wallpaper**.
3. In the pop-up menu, touch **Use home screen wallpaper** or touch **Use custom wallpaper** to select a photo from Gallery.

## Add a Widget on the Lock Screen

Choose from our selection of lock screen widgets.

**Note:** Before you can add a widget on the lock screen, you must select the **Enable lock screen widgets** option in **Settings > Security**.

1. On the lock screen, pull from the right edge of the touchscreen until you see a  icon.
2. Touch .
3. Touch a widget that you want to add to the lock screen.

## Move or Delete a Lock Screen Widget

1. On the lock screen, pull from the right edge of the touchscreen until you see the widget you want to move or delete.
2. Touch and hold the widget, and then drag it left or right to the position that you want.
3. Touch and hold the widget, and then drag it to  to remove it.

## Change Lock Screen Shortcuts

To change apps (or other shortcuts) on the lock screen, change the ones on the launch bar. To find out how, see [Customize the Launch Bar](#).

## Notification Widget

On the lock screen, you can see notifications such as missed calls, text messages, calendar events, and more.

1. Drag down from the clock to expand the widget.
2. If there is more than one missed call, text, or email, touch  to view the next notification.
3. Touch a notification to go directly to its app.

You can change which notifications appear on the widget in Security settings. See [Security Settings](#).

## Disable the Lock Screen

You can disable the Lock screen so you don't have to unlock your phone every time you wake it up.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Security**.
2. Touch **Screen lock** > **No lock screen**.

To enable the lock screen again, in **Security** settings, touch **Screen lock** > **Lock screen**.

## Onscreen Navigation Buttons

Your phone has onscreen navigation buttons at the bottom of the screen which rotate when you change the orientation. The onscreen navigation buttons do not show up when the screen is off.



- Touch  to go to the previous screen.
- Touch  to go to the Home screen.
- Touch  to show thumbnails of the most recently used apps.

**Tip:** Swipe up from any of the navigation buttons to access Google Search.

## Wake Up Phone Using Motion Launch

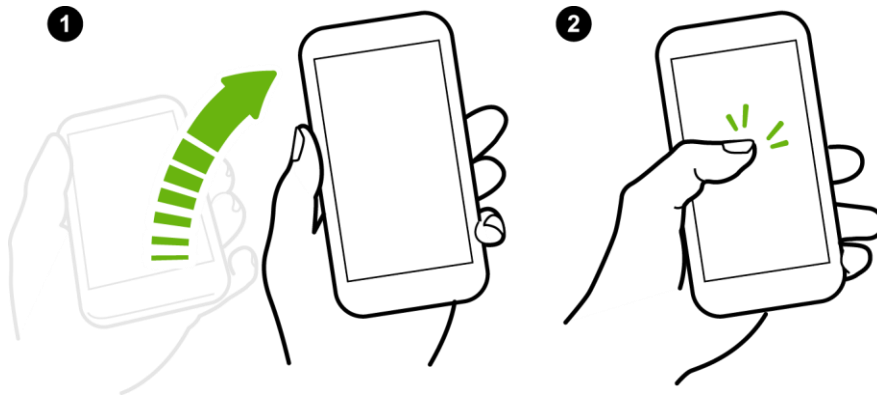
When the phone is in Sleep mode (screen is off), use Motion Launch to wake up and unlock your phone directly to a screen or app. Motion Launch is a combination of a motion gesture, which is to lift the phone, followed by a finger gesture.

If you've set up a screen lock, you'll be asked to provide your credentials first before your phone unlocks to the relevant app or screen.

### Wake Up the Phone

1. Lift the phone in portrait orientation.

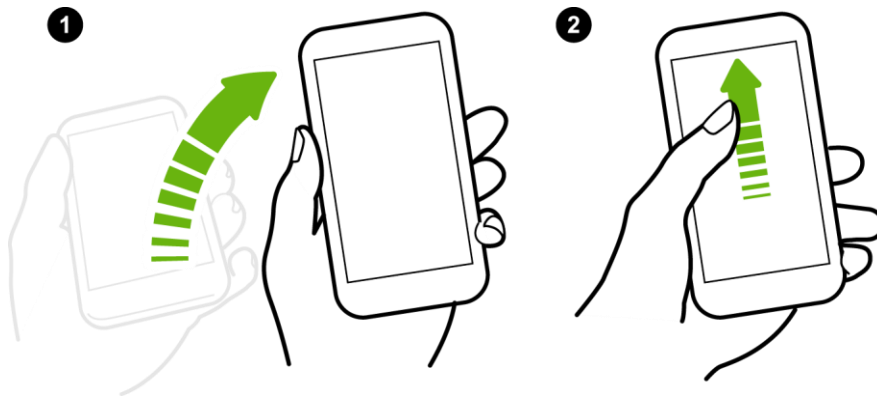
2. Immediately double-tap the screen.



Make sure you're not touching the screen when the phone vibrates.

### Wake Up and Unlock the Screen

1. Lift the phone in portrait orientation.
2. Swipe up the screen right away. You need to start swiping from the bottom half of the screen.

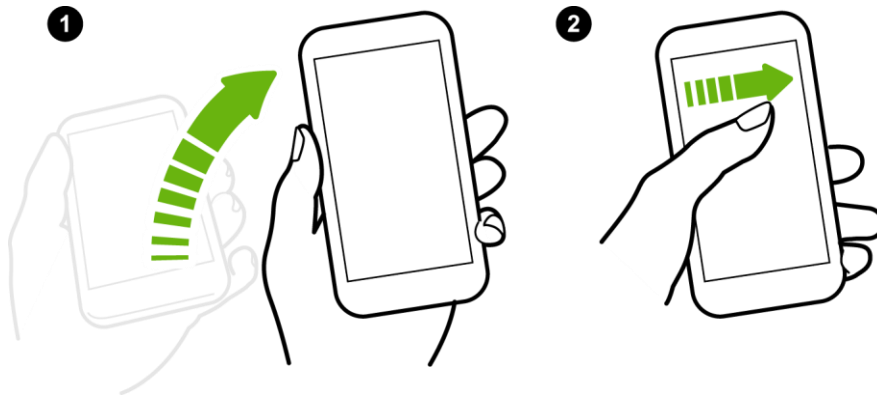


Make sure you're not touching the screen when the phone vibrates.

### Wake the Phone Directly to HTC BlinkFeed

1. Lift the phone in portrait orientation.

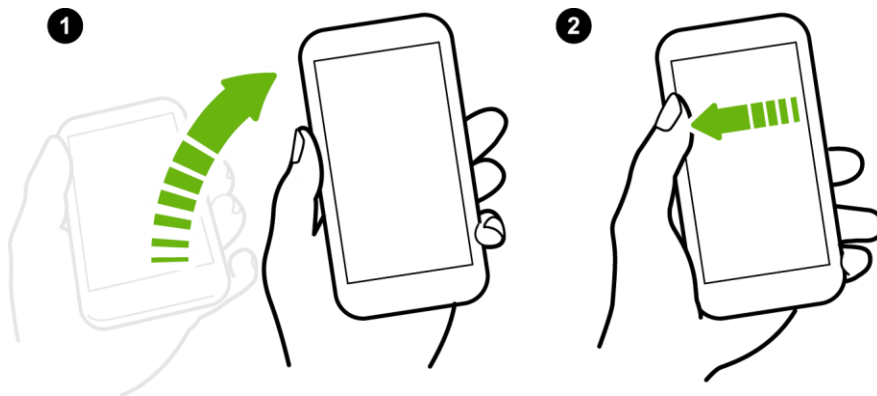
2. Swipe right across the screen right away.



Make sure you're not touching the screen when the phone vibrates.

### Wake the Phone Directly to the Home Widget Panel

1. Lift the phone in portrait orientation.
2. Swipe left across the screen right away.

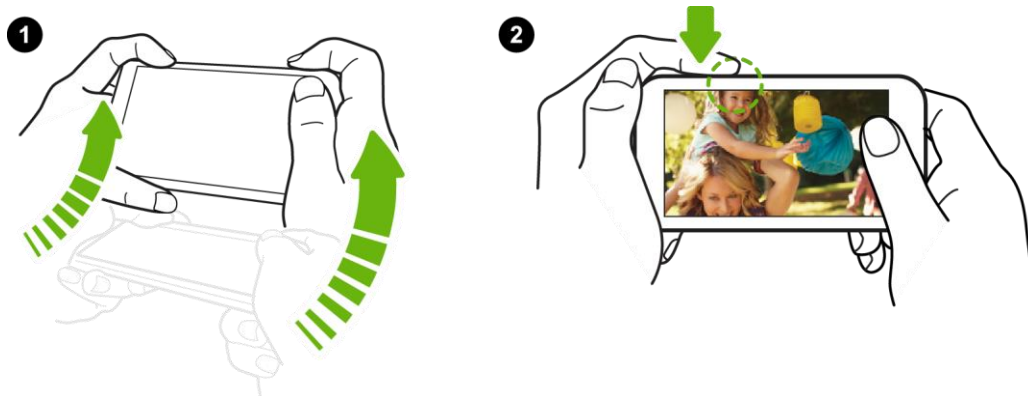


Make sure you're not touching the screen when the phone vibrates.

### Wake the Phone Directly to Camera

1. Lift the phone in landscape orientation.

2. Press the **Volume up** or **Volume down** button right away.



3. Release the **Volume button** when the phone vibrates.

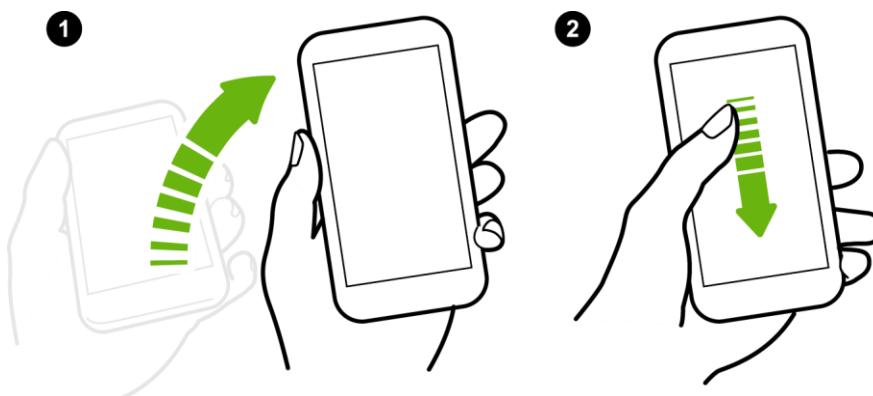
## *Make a Call with Quick Call*

When the screen is off and your phone is in sleep mode, easily make a call by just swiping and using voice commands.

**Note:** Make sure **Motion Launch gestures** and **Quick call** are turned on in **Settings > Display & gestures > Motion Launch gestures**.

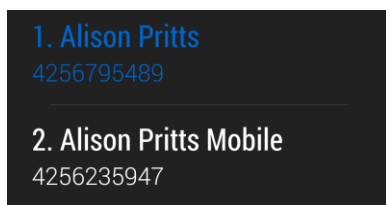
**Note:** If you've set a screen lock with credentials, you'll be asked to provide your credentials first before you can make the call.

1. Lift the phone in portrait orientation.
2. Swipe down the screen right away. You need to start swiping from the upper half of the screen.



3. When you see the microphone icon on the screen, hold the phone close to your mouth, and then say "Call" and the contact name. For example, say "Call Alison".
4. You can then do one of the following:

- If there are several contacts with the same name, say the full name of the contact you want to call.
- If a contact has several phone numbers, you'll see the following:



Just say the item number of the one you want to call. For example, say "2" to call the second one. Or say the full name and type of phone number as shown on the screen. For example, say "Alison Pritts Mobile".

5. If you're asked to confirm, say "Yes" or "No". To cancel the call, say "Cancel".

## Bypass the Screen Lock for Quick Call

If you've set a screen lock with credentials, you can set your phone to skip the security screen so you can immediately place calls with Quick call.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings, and then touch  > **Display & gestures**.
2. Touch **Motion Launch gestures**.
3. Select the **Bypass Security screen** option.

## Turn Motion Launch On or Off

Motion Launch is on by default. You can turn it off in Settings.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings, and then touch  > **Display & gestures**.
2. Touch **Motion Launch gestures**.
3. Clear the **Motion Launch gestures** option to turn it off, or select it to turn it back on.

## Motion Launch Troubleshooting

In **Settings > Display & gestures**, touch **Motion Launch gestures** and make sure this feature is turned on. If Motion Launch is already on but your phone is not responding to your gestures, see the possible causes below.

- There was no motion gesture before the finger gesture. Make sure to lift the phone first before doing the finger gesture.

- Length of swiping was too short. Swipe a longer distance across your screen.
- When swiping up to unlock the screen, you didn't swipe from the bottom half of the screen.
- You may have covered the proximity sensor while holding the phone.
- The duration of swiping may be too long. Release your finger when the phone vibrates.

## Touchscreen Navigation

Use touch gestures to get around the Home screen, open apps, scroll through lists, and more.

**Important:** When the **TalkBack** option in the Accessibility settings is turned on and the Explore by touch setting is selected, the regular touch gestures are replaced by the TalkBack gestures. For details, see [Navigate Your Phone with TalkBack](#).

### Touch

Touch the screen with your finger when you want to select onscreen items such as application and settings icons, or press onscreen buttons.

After you've scrolled down a long list or screen (in Settings and apps such as Mail and People), touch the status bar to jump straight to the top of your screen.



### Touch and Hold

To open the available options for an item (for example, a contact or link in a Web page), touch and hold the item.



### Swipe or Slide

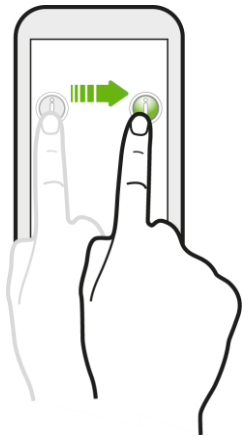
Quickly swipe your finger vertically or horizontally across the screen to go to other widget panels, scroll through documents, and more.



### Drag

To drag, press and hold your finger with some pressure before you start to drag. While dragging, do not release your finger until you have reached the target position.





### Flick

Flicking the screen is similar to swiping, except that you need to swipe your finger in light, quick strokes. This finger gesture is always in a vertical direction, such as when flicking the contacts or message list.



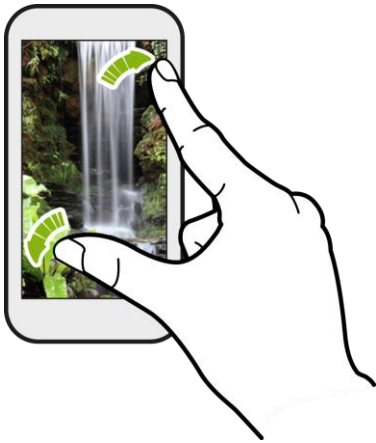
### Press and Flick

On the Home screen, you can easily move a widget or icon from one screen to another. Press and hold the widget or icon with one finger, and flick the screen to the new location with another finger.



### Slide with Two Fingers

In some apps, like Gallery, Messages, Mail, or the Web browser, slide two fingers apart to zoom in when viewing a picture or text.

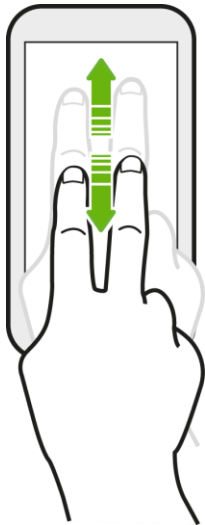


Slide two fingers together to zoom out of the picture or text.



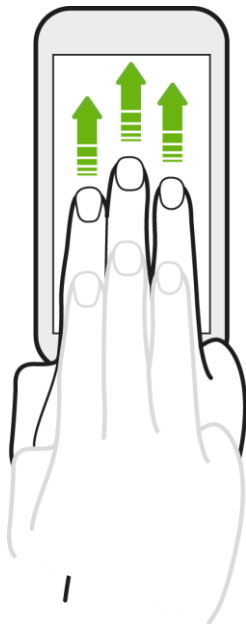
## Two-finger Swipe

Swipe down from the status bar using two fingers to access Quick Settings.



## Three-finger Gesture

- Swipe up using three fingers to share content such as photos, videos, and music from your phone. You can also share streaming media from apps such as YouTube™.
- Swipe down to disconnect from the device.



**Note:** Media gesture is turned on in Settings by default, which makes the three-finger gesture work only when sharing content or using HTC apps.

**Note:** The 3-finger gesture may not be available when TalkBack gestures are enabled. For details, see [Navigate Your Phone with TalkBack](#).

### Three-finger Touch

While using the HTC Car app, touch the screen with three fingers to activate the voice command mode.



## Motion Gestures

Use motion gestures to rotate the screen, mute, lower the ringtone volume, and more.

### Flip to Mute

When a call comes in, you can turn your phone over to mute it.



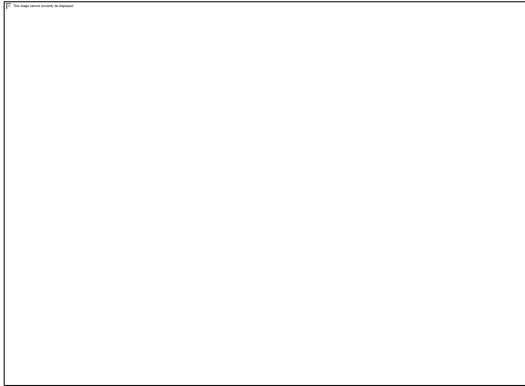
In **Settings**, touch **Sound** > **Flip to mute** to set your phone to:

- **Mute once.** Mute only once after you flipped the phone. The phone will ring again when there are subsequent incoming calls.

- **Mute always.** After flipping the phone to mute a call, keep it always muted for all incoming calls.

## Pick Up to Lower Volume

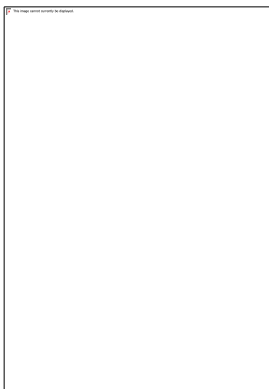
In a business meeting or restaurant, pick your phone up when a call comes in to lower the ringtone volume.



You can turn this feature on or off. In **Settings**, touch **Sound**, and then select or clear **Quiet ring on pickup**.

## Set Volume to Automatically Increase While in Your Pocket or Bag

You can set your phone to recognize when it's in your bag or pocket and raise the ringtone volume so that you can hear it in noisy environments.

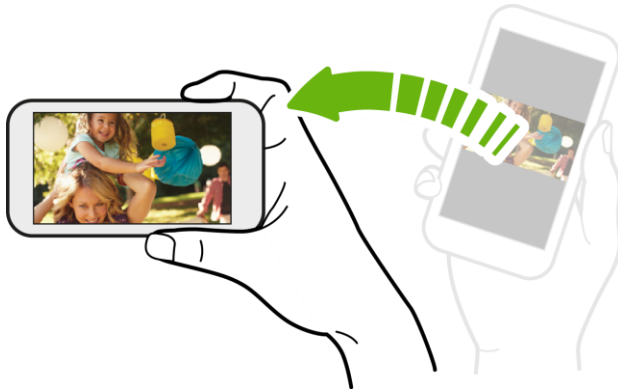


You can turn this feature on or off. In **Settings**, touch **Sound**, and then select or clear **Pocket mode**.

## Rotate Your Phone for a Better View

For most screens, you can automatically change the screen orientation from portrait to landscape by turning the phone sideways. When entering text, you can turn the phone sideways

to bring up a bigger keyboard. See [HTC Sense Keyboard](#) for more details.



To turn this feature off, clear the **Auto rotate screen** option in **Settings > Display & gestures**.

**Note:** The TalkBack accessibility feature works best if you turn off auto-rotate. For details, see [Navigate Your Phone with TalkBack](#).

## *Working with Phone Apps and Settings*

Quickly open your favorite apps even when the phone screen is locked and easily change your phone settings to make it truly yours.

### *Open an App*

There are several options for opening an app from the Home screen.

- Touch an app on the launch bar at the bottom of the Home screen.
- Touch  to go to the Apps screen, and then touch the app you want to use.
- On the Apps screen, touch , and then enter the name of the app you're looking for.

### *Open an App or Folder from the Lock Screen*

- On the lock screen, drag an app or folder icon up to unlock the screen and directly go to the app or folder.

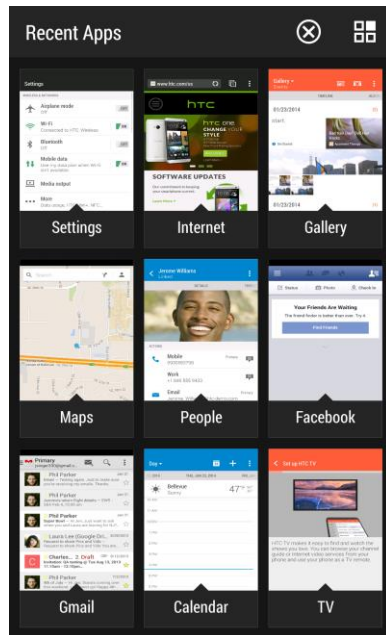
If you've set up a screen lock, you'll be asked to provide your credentials first before your phone opens the app or folder.

**Tip:** The shortcuts on the lock screen are the same ones on your Home screen's launch bar. To change the lock screen shortcuts, you'll have to replace the apps or folders on the launch bar.

### *Switch Between Recently Opened Apps*

When you're multitasking and using different apps on your phone, you can easily switch between the apps you've recently opened.

- Touch  to see recently-opened apps.
  - To switch back to an app, just touch it.
  - To remove an app from the list, drag it up.
  - To clear the recent apps list, touch  .

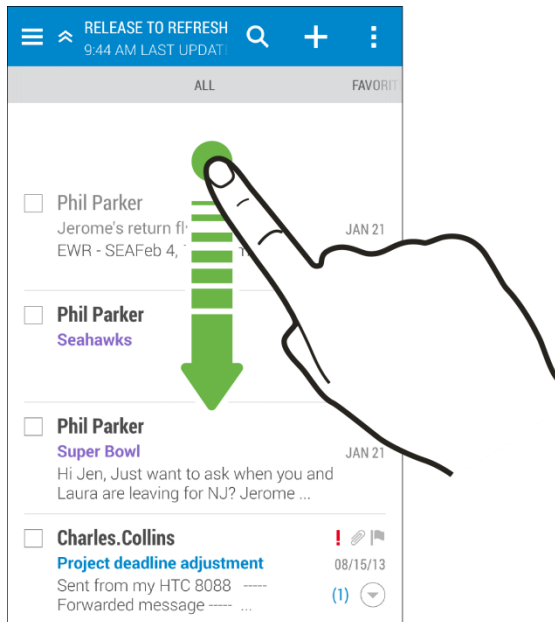


## Refresh Content

In some apps, you can easily refresh content that's synced or downloaded from the Web with a simple finger gesture.

1. While viewing content such as weather, stocks, or Mail inbox, scroll to the top of the screen.

2. Pull down the screen with your finger, and then release to refresh.



## Arrange Apps on the Apps Screen

Personalize the Apps screen to your liking. You can rearrange the apps and change the layout.

1. From HTC BlinkFeed or any widget panel, touch .
2. Touch  and then choose how to arrange apps, such as alphabetically. If you want to group apps into folders or rearrange them, select **Custom**.

## Move Apps and Folders

1. On the Apps screen, touch  > **Custom**.
2. Touch  > **Rearrange apps**.
3. Touch and hold an app or folder, and then do one of the following:
  - Drag the app to another position on the same page. Wait until you see the occupying icon move away before releasing your finger.
  - Drag the app to the  or  arrow to move it to another page.
4. When you're done moving apps and folders, touch .

## Group Apps into Folders

1. On the Apps screen, touch  > **Custom**.



2. Touch  > **Rearrange apps**.
3. Touch and hold an app, and then drag it over to another app to automatically create a folder.
4. To add more apps, drag each app over to the folder.
5. To name the folder, open the folder, touch its title bar, and then enter a folder name.
6. When you're done grouping apps and folders, touch .

### Remove Apps from a Folder

1. On the Apps screen, touch  > **Custom**.
2. Touch  > **Rearrange apps**.
3. Touch the folder to open it.
4. Touch and hold an app, and then drag it out to the Apps screen. Wait until you see the occupying icon move away before releasing your finger.
5. When you're done removing apps, touch .

### Hide or Show Apps on the Apps Screen

1. On the Apps screen, touch  > **Hide/Unhide apps**.
2. Select the apps you want to hide, or clear their check boxes to unhide them.
3. Touch **DONE**.

## Get to Know Your Settings

Change the ringtone, set up a Wi-Fi connection, add your accounts, and more in Settings.

1. Open Settings either from the Quick Settings panel or Apps screen.
  - With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings, and then touch .
  - From the Home screen, touch  to switch to the Apps screen, and then touch **Settings**.
2. Here are some of the basic settings you can change:
  - Touch the ON/OFF switch next to an item such as **Wi-Fi** to turn it on or off. Touch the item itself to configure its settings.

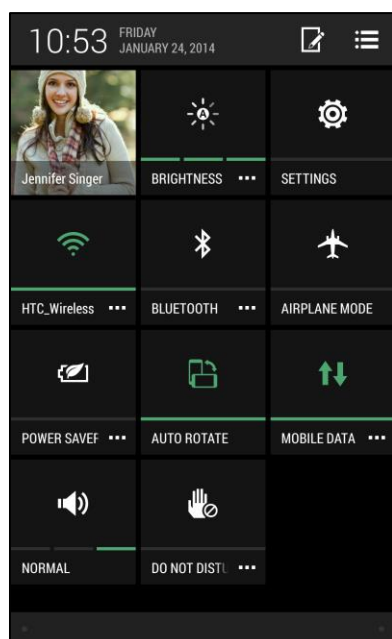
- Touch **Sound** to set a ringtone, choose a sound profile, and configure incoming call sound settings.
- Touch **Personalize** to change the wallpaper, add widgets and shortcuts to the widget panel, and more.
- Touch **Accounts & sync** to add and sign in to your different accounts, such as email, social networks, and more.
- Touch **Security** to help secure your phone, for example with a screen lock.

For more information, see [Settings](#).

## Using Quick Settings

In the Quick Settings panel, easily turn settings such as Wi-Fi and Bluetooth on or off.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.



2. To turn a setting on or off, just touch its tile.
3. To change the options for a setting, touch and hold its tile. Or touch ■ ■ ■.

**Tip:** You can also touch  to switch to Quick Settings from the Notifications panel.

## Customize Quick Settings

Aside from the default tiles, there are several other tiles available in Quick Settings.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.

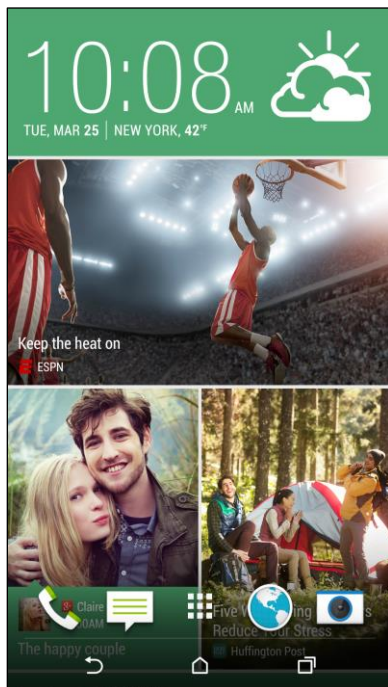
2. Touch  and do one of the following:

- In the Quick Settings list, touch and hold  next to the item you want to move and drag it to rearrange the list.
- Under Hidden items, touch and hold  and drag it up to make it available in Quick Settings.

**Note:** There is a limit to the number of tiles that can be shown in Quick Settings. You may need to remove an existing item to make space for another one. To remove an item, drag it below Hidden items.

## HTC BlinkFeed - Your Dynamic Home Screen

Stay in touch with friends or get the latest about your interests right on HTC BlinkFeed. Set up which social networks, news sources, and other information will appear.



- Swipe up or down to browse stories on HTC BlinkFeed.
- Touch a tile to view more details or to comment on a post or status update.
- While viewing a news article, swipe left or right to see more stories.
- While in HTC BlinkFeed, you can touch either  or , or touch the status bar to scroll to the top.
- Scroll to the top and pull down on the screen to manually refresh the stream.

- Swipe right on HTC BlinkFeed to open the slideout menu to choose the type or add your custom topics to display.

**Tip:** You'll see the clock widget on HTC BlinkFeed if you've set HTC BlinkFeed as the main Home screen.

## Turn HTC BlinkFeed On or Off

You can turn HTC BlinkFeed on or off.

1. On HTC BlinkFeed, slide two fingers together, and then touch .
2. While HTC BlinkFeed is selected, touch **REMOVE**.
3. To add it back, swipe right, and then touch the **+** button that has **BLINKFEED**.

## Add Content to HTC BlinkFeed

Personalize HTC BlinkFeed to show articles and status updates from your favorite news sources, categories, editions, and apps.

### Select Feeds

Discover stories and articles on HTC BlinkFeed based on your interests, favorite categories, and popular news channels or websites.

1. On HTC BlinkFeed, swipe right to open the slideout menu.
2. Touch  > **Add content**.
3. Choose a category. Or, if it's your first time to add content on HTC BlinkFeed, touch the **Get automatic recommendations from BlinkFeed** tile. Sign in to get recommendations.
4. Select one or more feed sources. You can touch a name first to check out a particular feed, and then touch  to add it to HTC BlinkFeed.

### Show Content From Your Apps and Social Networks

See your friends' posts in social networks or show content from your HTC apps right on HTC BlinkFeed.

**Note:** You need to sign in to your social networks to see their feeds on HTC BlinkFeed.

1. On HTC BlinkFeed, swipe right to open the slideout menu.
2. Touch  > **Services & Apps**.
3. Select the apps and social networks you like.

## Search and Add Topics of Interest

You can search for and select topics of interest to display them on HTC BlinkFeed.

1. On HTC BlinkFeed, swipe right to open the slideout menu.
2. Touch **Search for content**, and then enter the topic you're looking for.
3. Touch a result, and then touch  to add it under Custom topics.

## Subscribe to Multiple Regional Editions

By default, HTC BlinkFeed display feeds and information available for your current location. You can show one or more editions of your choice on HTC BlinkFeed.

1. On HTC BlinkFeed, swipe right to open the slideout menu.
2. Touch  > **Add content**.
3. Touch , and then select a locale or region.
4. Select the feed sources to add.

## Subscribe to RSS Feeds

Never miss out on news and updates from your favorite blog or website by adding custom RSS feeds right on HTC BlinkFeed.

1. Open the Internet app and go to the RSS feed URL of the blog or website you want to subscribe to.
2. Touch  to add it to HTC BlinkFeed.
3. Enter the feed name and touch **Subscribe**.

## *Customize the Highlights Feed*

Go to the Highlights feed to see a mix of top trending articles and status updates from the feed sources you added. You can also set the Highlights feed to only show items from your favorite news sources, categories, and apps.

**Note:** You cannot add custom topics and RSS to the Highlights feed.

1. On HTC BlinkFeed, swipe right to open the slideout menu.
2. Touch  > **Settings** > **Choose Highlights topics**.
3. Select the feed sources you want to appear in Highlights.

## Save Articles for Later

You can bookmark articles to your reading list so you can read them later.

- Do one of the following:
  - While viewing an article, touch .
  - On HTC BlinkFeed, touch and hold the tile of the article you want to bookmark, and then touch **Read later**.

You'll find the reading list in the slideout menu.

## Post to Your Social Networks

You can easily post a status update from HTC BlinkFeed.

1. On HTC BlinkFeed, swipe right to open the slideout menu.
2. Touch  > **Compose**, and then choose a social network.
3. Compose your status update and post it on your social network.

## Remove Content From HTC BlinkFeed

Whether it's a tile or an entire feed, you can remove content you don't want to see on HTC BlinkFeed.

- To remove a tile, touch and hold the tile you want to remove, and then touch **Remove**.
- To remove a feed source, in the slideout menu, touch  > **Remove content**, select one or more items, and then touch **REMOVE**.
- To unsubscribe to a localized edition, in the slideout menu, touch  > **Remove content**. On the Remove content screen, touch  > **Remove editions**, select one or more items, and then touch **REMOVE**.

## Customize the Home Screen

Your phone allows you to change the wallpaper, add or remove widget panels, change your main Home screen, and add shortcuts, folders, and widgets at any time.

### Change the Wallpaper

Choose from the available wallpapers, or use any photo you've taken with the camera.

1. Touch and hold an empty space on a widget panel.
2. In the pop-up menu, touch **Home screen wallpaper**.
3. Choose from where you want to select a wallpaper.

- To use a photo you captured with the camera, touch **Gallery**, choose and crop a photo, and then touch **DONE**.
- Touch **Computer photos** to use the HTC Get Started service to choose a photo from your computer.

## Customize the Launch Bar

The launch bar on your Home screen gives you one-touch access to commonly used apps and other shortcuts. You can replace the apps on the launch bar with other apps that you often use.

1. Touch and hold the app you want to replace, and then drag it out to .



2. Touch  to go to the Apps screen.
3. Touch and hold an app, and then drag it to the empty slot on the launch bar.

**Tip:** You can also group apps on the launch bar into a folder. See .

**Tip:** The apps or shortcuts you see on the lock screen are the same as the ones in the launch bar.

## Change Your Main Home Screen

Set HTC BlinkFeed or a widget panel as your main Home screen.

1. Touch and hold an empty space on a widget panel.
2. In the pop-up menu, touch **Manage home screen pages**.
3. Swipe left or right until you see the panel that you want to use as your main Home screen.
4. Touch **SET AS HOME**.
5. Touch .

**Note:** Touching  from an app will first return you to the last panel you were in. Just touch  again to go to your main Home screen.

## Organize Your Widget Panels

Organize your widget panels depending on your need.

### Add or Remove a Widget Panel

**Note:** You won't be able to add a new widget panel if you've already reached the maximum limit.

**Note:** If it's not removed, HTC BlinkFeed always appears as the first panel. A widget panel cannot be inserted before HTC BlinkFeed.

1. Touch and hold an empty space on a widget panel.
2. In the pop-up menu, touch **Manage home screen pages**.
3. To add a new widget panel, swipe until you see the **+** icon, and then touch it.
4. To remove a widget panel, swipe left or right until you see the panel, and then touch **REMOVE**.
5. Touch .

### Arrange Widget Panels

**Note:** A widget panel cannot be moved or inserted before HTC BlinkFeed.

1. On HTC BlinkFeed or any widget panel, slide two fingers together to customize the Home screen.
2. Touch and hold a widget panel thumbnail, and then drag it left or right to the position you want.
3. Touch .

## Work with Widgets and App Shortcuts

Add widgets and app shortcuts to the Home screen.

### Add Widgets on Your Home Screen

Widgets make at-a-glance important information and media content easily available. Choose from a selection of widgets and add the most useful ones to your Home screen.

1. Touch and hold an empty space on a widget panel.
2. In the pop-up menu, touch **Add apps and widgets**.
3. Touch  > **Widgets**.



4. Scroll through the widgets or touch  to search for specific widgets. Some widgets are available in different styles and sizes.
5. Touch and hold a widget, and then drag it to a widget panel you want to add it to.

You can also add widgets that allow you to quickly switch on or off certain settings such as Bluetooth and GPS.

## Change the Widget Settings

You can modify basic settings of some widgets (for example, the Clock widget) from the Home screen. Some widgets can also be resized after you've added them to your Home screen.

- Touch and hold the widget on your Home screen, and then drag it to . You can then customize the widget settings.
- To resize the widget, touch and hold the widget. If a border appears around the widget, drag the sides of the border to enlarge or shrink the widget size.

## Add Apps and Other Shortcuts on Your Home Screen

Place apps you often use on your Home screen. You can also add shortcuts to frequently used settings, bookmarked Web pages, and more.

1. Touch and hold an empty space on a widget panel.
2. In the pop-up menu, touch **Add apps and widgets**.
3. Touch  > **Apps** or **Shortcuts**.
4. Scroll through the apps or shortcuts, or touch  to search for one.
5. Touch and hold an app or shortcut icon, and then drag it to a widget panel where you want to add it.

**Note:** To add an app from the Apps screen, touch and hold an app and drag it to a widget panel.

## Move or Remove Items on Your Home Screen

1. Touch and hold the widget or app shortcut you want to move or remove.
2. To move the item to another position on the same panel, just drag it to a new area and then release it.
3. To move the item to another Home screen panel, flick left or right to rotate the screen to another widget panel, and then release it.



4. To remove the item, drag it to , and when the item turns red, release it.

## Status and Notifications

The status bar and notification panel make it easy to see your phone's connection, alert you of new messages, and much more.

### Status Bar

The status bar at the top of the Home screen provides phone and service status information on the right side and notification alerts on the left. To view notification alerts, touch and hold the status bar and drag it down.

#### Status Icons



| Icon                                                                                | Description                                                                                     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Signal strength (more bars = stronger signal)                                                   |
|  | No service                                                                                      |
|  | Connected to a Wi-Fi network                                                                    |
|  | Sprint Spark™ enhanced LTE network (data service) is available and active                       |
|  | 3G (data service) is available and active (icon animates)                                       |
|  | Phone's location feature is on and available for location-based services such as GPS navigation |
|  | Phone's location feature off*                                                                   |
|  | NFC is on                                                                                       |

|                                                                                   |                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Phone microphone muted                                           |
|  | Phone speaker muted                                              |
|  | Vibrate mode                                                     |
|  | Shows current battery charge level (icon shown is fully charged) |
|  | Bluetooth on                                                     |
|  | Connected to Bluetooth device                                    |
|  | Airplane mode                                                    |
|  | Alarm set                                                        |
|  | Wired microphone headset connected                               |
|  | Wired headset connected                                          |

**\*Important:** Turning off a location service means no applications on your phone will collect your location data through that location service. However, third party applications may collect — and your phone may continue to provide — location data through other services, including through Wi-Fi and signal triangulation.

## Notification Icons



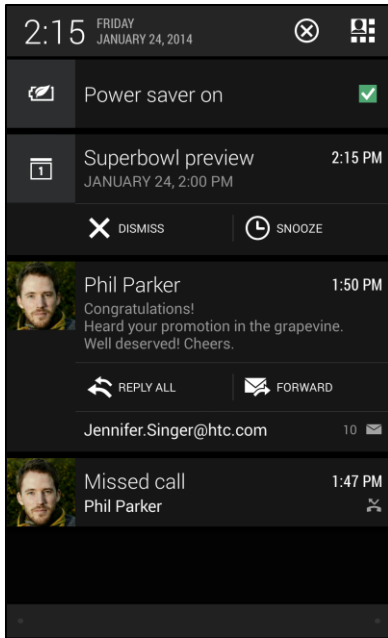
| Icon                                                                                | Description                                                  |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | New text or multimedia message                               |
|  | New voicemail                                                |
|  | New Gmail message                                            |
|  | New Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync or POP3/IMAP email message |
|  | Upcoming event                                               |
|  | Music is playing                                             |
|  | Power saver mode is on                                       |

|                                                                                   |                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
|  | General notification (for example, sync error)    |
|  | Wi-Fi is on and wireless networks are available   |
|  | Data synchronizing – connected to HTC Sync        |
|  | More (undisplayed) notifications                  |
|  | Missed call                                       |
|  | Call in progress                                  |
|  | Uploading data (animated)                         |
|  | Downloading data (animated)                       |
|  | Waiting to upload                                 |
|  | Phone connected to computer via USB cable         |
|  | Downloaded Google Play app installed successfully |

## *Notifications Panel*

When you see notification icons, open the Notifications panel to check out details of the notifications that you've received. You can also quickly access settings from the Notifications panel.

1. Slide down from the top of the screen to open the notifications panel.



If you have several notifications, scroll down the screen to see them all.

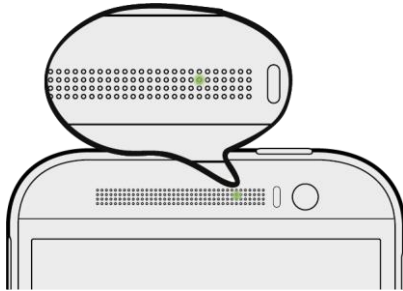
2. On the Notifications panel:

- You can expand certain notifications to see more information, such as email previews and calendar events. Spread with your two fingers to expand a notification, or pinch to collapse it.
- You'll see icons in some notifications that allow you to take immediate actions. For example, when you have a missed call, touch the available icons to return the call or reply with a text message.
- Touch the notification icon to open the corresponding app.
- To dismiss just one notification in the list, drag it left or right.

3. To close the Notifications panel, slide up from the bottom bar of the panel or touch . You can also touch  to dismiss all notifications and close the Notifications panel.

## Notification LED

The Notification LED provides phone information at a glance. The indicator shows:



- Solid green light when your phone is connected to the power adapter or a computer and the battery is fully charged.
- Flashing green light when you have a pending notification (for example, a new message or a missed call) and the display is off or you're on the lock screen.
- Solid orange light when the battery is being charged.
- Flashing orange light when the battery level reaches very low. (Power is below 14%.)

**Note:** The indicators are listed in order of priority. For example, if your phone is connected to the AC adapter and the battery is charging, the LED will be solid orange and will not switch to a flashing green light even if there is a pending notification.

## Capture the Phone Screen

Capture the phone screen to show off your high game score, write a blog post about your phone's features, or post a status update about a song you're playing.

- Press and hold the **Power** button and the **Volume down** button at the same time.

The image is saved in the Screenshots album in Gallery.

**Tip:** To share the image immediately after capturing, wait until you see the icon  in the status bar. Slide the Notifications panel open, and touch  under the Screenshot notification. If you don't see , touch and hold the screenshot notification and then slide down on the screen.

## Enter Text

You can type on your phone using one of the available touchscreen keyboards.

### HTC Sense Keyboard

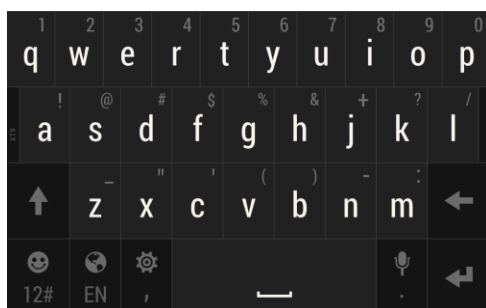
Typing is fast and accurate with the HTC Sense® keyboard.

- Word prediction also saves typing time. As you type, you'll see word suggestions that you can choose from. You can even add words, phrases, and shortcuts to the word prediction dictionary. For details, see [Enter Text with Word Prediction on the HTC Sense Keyboard](#).
- You can type words by just speaking. For details, see [Enter Text by Speaking on the HTC Sense Keyboard](#).
- Turn on the **Trace keyboard** so you can type words by just sliding your finger from one letter to another. For details, see [Enter Text with the HTC Sense Keyboard Using the Trace Keyboard](#).
- Just swipe right to access the numeric and symbol keyboard. Or swipe left to switch between languages.
- The keys have secondary numbers, punctuation symbols, or other characters that you can quickly insert without having to switch to the numeric and symbol keyboard. For example, just touch and hold a key on the first row to insert a number.
- Choose from a wide selection of emojis.
- Show or hide navigational arrow keys on the keyboard. If you enable the arrow keys in Settings, they'll only appear on the portrait keyboard.

And since everyone has their own typing style, you can calibrate the keyboard in **Settings > Language & keyboard > HTC Sense Input > Advanced > Calibration tool** so it learns how you type.

## *Enter Text by Typing on the HTC Sense Keyboard*

The onscreen keyboard becomes available when you touch a text field in an app. Enter letters and numbers, change the keyboard layout or language, and more.



1. Touch the keys on the onscreen keyboard to enter letters and numbers, as well as punctuation marks and symbols.
  - Touch  to enter an uppercase letter. Touch  twice to turn on caps lock.

- Touch and hold keys with gray characters at the top to enter numbers, symbols, or accented letters. Some keys have multiple characters or accents associated with them.
- Swipe right to show number and symbol keys. To return to the main keyboard, swipe left.
- On supported apps, turn the phone sideways to show a larger Standard keyboard that lets you type easily using two thumbs.
- Touch  to close the onscreen keyboard.

**Tips:** To open the keyboard settings, touch and hold the comma key until you see  above the key. Or go to **Settings > Language & keyboard > HTC Sense Input**.

## Change the HTC Sense Keyboard Layout

You can choose from different keyboard layouts to suit your typing style.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Language & keyboard**.
2. Touch **HTC Sense Input > Keyboard selection**.
3. Touch **Keyboard types**, and then select the keyboard layout you want to use.

## Change the HTC Sense Keyboard Language

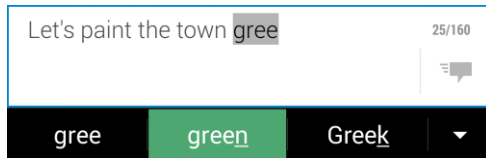
If multiple keyboard languages are available on your phone, you can choose which languages to enable in the onscreen keyboard.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Language & keyboard**.
2. Touch **HTC Sense Input > Keyboard selection**, and then choose the languages you want.
3. To change the keyboard language, do any of the following:
  - Swipe left on the onscreen keyboard (not available if you're using trace keyboard).
  - Touch the language key (for example, ) until you see the language you want to use.
  - Touch and hold the language key, and then drag your finger to the keyboard language you want to use



## Enter Text with Word Prediction on the HTC Sense Keyboard

The onscreen keyboard has predictive text to help you type quickly and accurately. Predictive text input is enabled by default, and word suggestions are displayed as you type.



To enter a word in predictive mode, do any of the following:

- Touch the space bar to insert the highlighted word in the suggestion list.
- Touch a word from the suggestion list.
- Touch the arrow next to the suggestion list to see more choices.

**Tip:** If you've accidentally chosen a wrong word from the suggestion list, you can always go back and change it by touching the word and selecting another suggestion.

### Set a Second Language for Word Prediction

You can set the word prediction to be bilingual. As you type, you'll get word suggestions in the languages that you've selected.

**Note:** Bilingual prediction is available only when you're using a Latin-based keyboard.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Language & keyboard** > **HTC Sense Input**.
2. Touch **Keyboard selection** > **Bilingual prediction**, and then choose the language you want.

### Add Words and Phrases to the Word Prediction Dictionary

Add frequently-used names, acronyms, and even phrases to the word prediction dictionary to easily find them in the suggestion list.

Type even faster when you create text shortcuts for words and phrases. Instead of typing "**Talk to you later**", save a few keystrokes by adding the **ttyl** shortcut. In your message or email, just type "**ttyl**", and then touch the spacebar to enter the complete phrase.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Language & keyboard** > **HTC Sense Input**.
2. Touch **Personal dictionary** > .

3. Enter a word or phrase, and then enter its text shortcut. Be sure to remember this shortcut, including the uppercase and lowercase letters you've typed.
4. Touch **OK**.

While you're entering text using the Standard keyboard layout, touching an underlined word lets you store it in the dictionary or replace it with a suggested word.

### Edit or Delete Words and Phrases in the Word Prediction Dictionary

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Language & keyboard** > **HTC Sense Input**.
2. Touch **Personal dictionary**.
  - To edit a word, phrase, or shortcut, touch the item in the list.
  - To delete items from the dictionary, touch  > **Delete**. Select the words you want to remove, and then touch **DELETE**.

### *Enter Text with the HTC Sense Keyboard Using the Trace Keyboard*

Instead of touching the keys on the onscreen keyboard, you can "trace" to type words.

**Note:** You need to turn on **Trace keyboard** in **Settings > Language & keyboard > HTC Sense Input**.

1. Touch an area where you want to enter text.
2. Slide your finger from one letter to the next to enter a word.
3. Lift your finger when the word is completed.

If the word that appears after you traced isn't the one you want, you can:

- Touch a word from the suggestion list.
- Touch the arrow next to the suggestion list to see more choices.

### *Enter Text by Speaking on the HTC Sense Keyboard*

Try speaking the words to enter them in most text fields that let you use the touch input keyboard.

1. Touch an area where you want to enter text.
2. On the onscreen keyboard, touch and hold .
3. When you see the microphone image, speak out the words you want to type.

**Tip:** To set the voice input language, touch the language bar above the microphone image. You can choose one or more languages. Available languages depend on the voice input languages supported by Google.

4. If a word doesn't match what you've spoken and it's underlined, touch the underlined word to delete it or to see more choices.
5. Enter punctuation marks by saying the name (for example, say "comma").

## Swype Keyboard

Enter text by sliding on or touching the keys on the Swype® keyboard, or by speaking.

### Switch to the Swype Keyboard

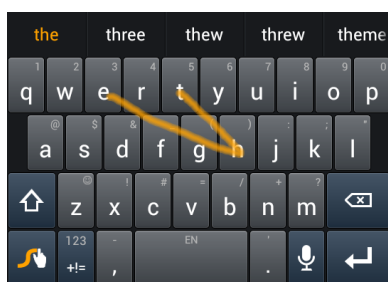
You can change your phone's text input method to Swype from the default HTC Sense keyboard. To change the input method to Swype:

1. Touch an area where you want to enter text.
2. Slide the Notifications panel open, and then touch **Choose input method > Swype**.

### Enter Text Using Swype

Slide your finger on the Swype keyboard to enter text.

1. Touch an area where you want to enter text.
2. Briefly press and hold the first letter of the word you want to enter, and then slide your finger to the other letters of the word.
3. When you've reached the last letter, lift your finger.  
For example, to enter the word "the", touch and hold **t**, and then slide your finger to **h** and **e**.



**Note:** If you've entered a word that Swype doesn't recognize, word suggestions appear at the top of the keyboard. Touch a word to enter it to your text.

There are many options to choose from with Swype keyboard settings. While using the Swype keyboard, touch and hold  to adjust the Swype settings.

## Enter Text by Typing on the Swype Keyboard or by Speaking

Instead of using the Swype slide method, you can enter text by touching the keys on the Swype keyboard or by speaking.

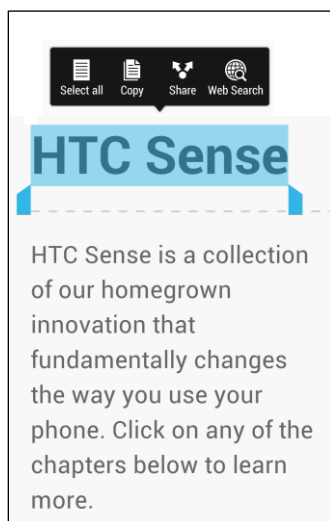
- Touch the keys on the onscreen keyboard to enter letters and numbers, as well as punctuation marks and symbols.
- Touch  to enter an uppercase letter. Touch  twice to turn on caps lock.
- Touch and hold keys with gray characters at the top to enter numbers, symbols, or accented letters. Some keys have multiple characters or accents associated with them.
- Touch **123** to show number and symbol keys. To return to the main keyboard, touch **ABC**.
- Touch  to enter text by speaking.
- Touch and hold the space bar to change the keyboard language.

## Edit Text

In HTC apps such as Internet and Mail, you can select and copy text, and then paste or share it.

### Select, Copy, and Paste Text

1. Touch and hold on a word.
2. Drag the start and end anchors to highlight the surrounding text you want to select.



**Tip:** You can use the magnifier to zoom in while selecting your text. To turn on the magnifier, with two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings. Touch  >

**Accessibility**, and then select the **Show magnifier** option. You'll see the magnifier when you touch one of the text selection anchors.

3. After you have selected the text you want to copy, touch **Copy**. The selected text is then copied to the clipboard.
4. In a text entry field (for example while composing an email), touch and hold at the point where you want to paste the text.
5. Touch **Paste**.

**Tip:** To copy the address of a linked webpage, touch and hold the link, and then touch **Copy link URL**.

### Share Text

1. After you have selected the text you want to share, touch **Share**.
2. Choose where to paste and share the selected text, such as in an email message or social network status update.

# Phone Calls

---

Your phone's calling features let you enjoy clear phone calls across the country.

## *HD™ Voice*

Your phone is also HD Voice enabled, which means you can enjoy unparalleled voice quality in areas with HD Voice service. Experience the crystal clear difference of HD Voice from Sprint on calls between Sprint customers each using an HD Voice enabled phone while in areas with available HD Voice service.



**Note:** HD Voice service is available in select markets. Visit [sprint.com/coverage](http://sprint.com/coverage) for more information

## *Make Phone Calls*

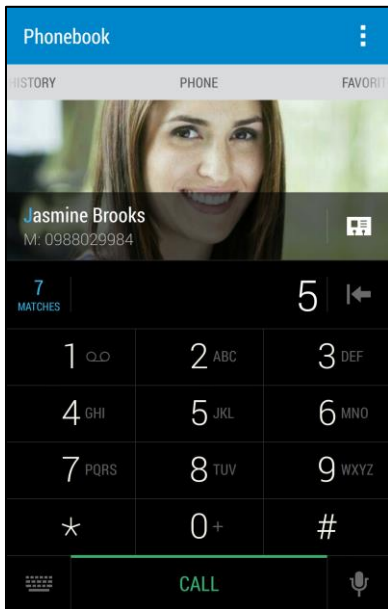
There are several convenient ways to place calls from your phone.

### *Call Using Smart Dial*

You can either dial a number directly, or use Smart dial to quickly place a call.

Smart dial searches and calls a stored/synced contact or a number from your call history.

1. Touch  >  to display the phone's dialer screen.
2. Enter the phone number or first few letters of the contact's name to see the top matching contact.
3. If there are a number of matches found (for example, 3 MATCHES), touch the number to see all the matches.



4. Touch the contact you want to call.

- To check other phone numbers associated with the contact, touch  beside the contact name.
- If the phone number has an extension, touch  after connecting to the main line and then dial the extension number.

5. To hang up, touch **END CALL**.

## Change the Phone Dialer Layout

Switch between a large or standard dial keypad.

1. Touch  >  to display the phone's dialer screen.
2. Touch  > **Large dial pad** or **Standard dial pad**.

## Dial an Extension Number

To skip voice prompts when dialing an extension number, do one of the following.

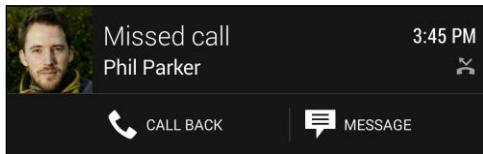
- After dialing the main number, touch and hold . The letter **p** is added to the number you are dialing. Enter the extension number, and then touch . You will be connected to the mainline and then to the extension number.
- After dialing the main number, touch and hold . The letter **w** is added to the number you are dialing. Enter the extension number, and then touch . After connecting to the main line, touch **SEND** to dial the extension number.

**Tip:** You can save phone numbers with an extension in the People app.

## Return a Missed Call

You'll see this icon  in the status bar when you missed a call.

1. Slide the Notifications panel open to check who the caller is.
2. To return the call, spread your two fingers on the missed call notification to expand it, and then touch **CALL BACK**.



**Tip:** You can also touch the notification to display call history and then touch the entry to call it.

3. If you have multiple missed calls, touch the missed calls notification to open the **CALL HISTORY** tab.

## Call From Call History

You can directly call numbers stored in your Call history.

1. Touch  > .
2. Swipe right to display the **CALL HISTORY** tab.
3. Touch an entry to place a call.

**Note:** You cannot make calls from Call history to entries identified as **No ID** or **Restricted**.

**Tip:** Touch and hold an entry in the Call history list to open the options menu where you can select to view the contact information (if number is stored in People), edit the number before you call, send a text message, or delete the entry from the Call history list and more.

## Call From People

Call your contacts from the People application.

1. Touch  >  > **People**.
2. Touch the contact you want to call to open the contact details screen.
3. Touch a phone number to place a call.

For additional information, see [People](#).



## Call Using a Speed Dial Number

Speed dial numbers let you dial numbers by touching and holding a single number on the Phone keypad.

1. Touch  >  to display the phone dialer's screen.
2. Touch and hold the speed dial key on the Phone keypad. The display confirms that you have dialed the number when it shows "Dialing" on the upper right side of the screen.

See [Set Up Speed Dial](#) for information on assigning speed dial numbers.

## Call a Number in a Text Message, Email Message, or Calendar Event

While viewing a text message, email, or a Calendar event that has a phone number in it, you can just touch the phone number to place a call.

For additional information, see [Text Messaging and MMS](#), [Email](#), and [Calendar](#).

## Call Emergency Numbers

You can place calls to 911 even if the phone's screen is locked or your account is restricted.

**Important:** You won't be able to make an emergency call if you don't have a network signal.

1. Unlock the screen. For more information, see [Turn Your Screen On and Off](#).
2. Touch  on the Home screen.
3. Touch    **CALL**.

**Note:** If you've enabled but forgotten your lock password or lock pattern, you can still make emergency calls by touching **Emergency call** on the screen.

## Enhanced 911 (E911) Information

This phone features an embedded Global Positioning System (GPS) chip necessary for utilizing E911 emergency location services where available.

When you place an emergency 911 call, the GPS feature of your phone seeks information to calculate your approximate location. Depending on several variables, including availability and access to satellite signals, it may take up to 30 seconds or more to determine and report your approximate location.

**Important:** Always report your location to the 911 operator when placing an emergency call. Some designated emergency call takers, known as Public Safety Answering Points (PSAPs), may not be equipped to receive GPS location information from your phone.

## Make International Calls

When placing international calls, plus code dialing automatically adds the international dialing code for your location (for example, 011 for international calls made from the U.S.).

**Note:** In **Settings > Call > CDMA call settings > Plus code dialing**, make sure the **North American dialing** option is selected.

**Note:** To call someone in your contacts list, the stored phone number needs to have a "+" sign followed by the country code, area code, and phone number.

1. Touch  > .
2. Enter the first few letters of a contact name, and then touch a contact to call. If you don't have the number stored, touch and hold the zero key until a "+" sign appears. Then enter the country code, area code, and phone number, and touch **CALL**.

The Phone dialer automatically adds your international dialing code to the number.

**Note:** The Phone dialer dials as is and doesn't automatically add your international access code when you dial a phone number that has a "+1" in front or when there's no plus sign in front of the number.

**Important:** International calls may incur additional fees. Contact Sprint customer service for details.

## Change the International Dialing Code

By default, the international dialing code is set to 011. When you're traveling in another country, you can set the international dialing code to your current location.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Call**.
2. Touch **CDMA call settings > Plus code dialing > International dialing**.
3. Enter the dialing code of the country where you're located, and then touch **OK**.

## Set Up Speed Dial

Your phone can store up to eight phone numbers in speed dial locations. (The number 1 is reserved for Sprint voicemail access.)

To assign a speed dial number to a contact:

1. Touch  >  > **People**, and then touch a contact.
2. Touch  > **Set speed dial**.

3. Touch **Not assigned** under Number to select the contact's number that you want to assign to the speed dial key.
4. Touch **Not assigned** under Location and then select a speed dial location.
5. Touch **SAVE**.

**Note:** If you assign a number to an already assigned speed dial location, the new phone number will automatically replace the previous speed dial assignment.

## Receive Phone Calls

When you receive a phone call from a contact, the Incoming call screen appears.

**Note:** Your phone will automatically adjust the ringtone volume when you use the polite ringer and pocket mode features.

**Note:** If your phone is off, all calls automatically go to voicemail.

### Answer or Reject an Incoming Call

- If the display is on when you get a call, touch **ANSWER** or **DECLINE**.
- If the display is locked when you get a call, drag  or  upwards.

You can also press the **Power** button twice to reject a call.

**Tip:** After declining a call, you can send a text message to the caller or create a task to remind you to return the call. All declined calls go to your voicemail.

### Mute the Ringing Sound without Rejecting the Call

- Press the **Volume up** or **Volume down** button.
- Briefly press the **Power** button.
- Place the phone face down on a level surface. (You can do this even on the Lock screen.)

**Note:** If your phone is already facing down, it will still ring when there are subsequent incoming calls.

## In-call Options

Touching  during a call displays a list of available in-call features.

- **Add call** to initiate a three-way call.
- **Flash** to accept another incoming call and put the first caller on hold. Touch **Flash** again to talk to the first caller.

- **People** to display your contacts list.
- **Open contact card** to display the caller's contact information.

**Note:** When the phone is completing a call, only **People** and **Flash** are available.

You can also touch  to mute the microphone. Touch the button again to unmute. To turn the speakerphone on or off, touch . You can adjust the speaker volume by pressing the volume button.

**Warning:** Because of higher volume levels, do not place the phone near your ear during speakerphone use.

## 3-way Calling

With 3-Way Calling, you can talk to two people at the same time. When using this feature, the normal airtime rates will be charged for each of the two calls.

1. Touch  > .
2. Dial a number and touch **CALL**.
3. Once you have established the connection, touch  > **Add call**, and dial the second number. (This puts the first caller on hold and dials the second number.)

**Tip:** You can add a call even if the first call was an incoming call.

4. When you're connected to the second party, touch .

If one of the people you called hangs up during your call, you and the remaining caller stay connected. If you initiated the call and are the first to hang up, all callers are disconnected.

To end the three-way call, touch **END CALL**.

## End a Call

There are a couple of options for ending a phone call.

- On the call screen, touch **END CALL**.
- Slide the Notifications panel open, and then touch .

If the phone number of the person who called is not in your contacts list, you can choose to save the number to your contacts list after you hang up.

## Call Services

Your phone provides many useful features and options to help you make the most of your calling experience.

## Caller ID

Caller ID identifies a caller before you answer the phone by displaying the number of the incoming call. If you do not want your number displayed when you make a call, follow these steps.

1. Touch  > .
2. Touch  **6** MNO **7** PQRS.
3. Enter a phone number.
4. Touch **CALL**.

To permanently block your number, call Sprint Customer Service.

## Call Waiting

When you're on a call, Call Waiting alerts you to incoming calls by sounding two beeps. Your phone's screen informs you that another call is coming in and displays the caller's phone number (if it is available and you are in digital mode).

To respond to an incoming call while you're on a call:

- Touch  > **Flash**. (This puts the first caller on hold and answers the second call.)

To switch back to the first caller:

- Touch  > **Flash** again.

**Note:** For those calls where you don't want to be interrupted, you can temporarily disable Call Waiting by touching  **7** PQRS **0** **+** before placing your call. Call Waiting is automatically reactivated once you end the call.

## Call Forwarding

Call Forwarding lets you forward all your incoming calls to another phone number – even when your phone is turned off. You can continue to make calls from your phone when you have activated Call Forwarding.

**Note:** Depending on your plan, you may be charged a higher rate for calls you have forwarded.

To activate Call Forwarding:

1. Touch  > .
2. Touch  **7** PQRS **2** ABC.
3. Enter the area code and phone number to which you want your calls forwarded.

4. Touch **CALL**. (You will hear a tone to confirm the activation of Call Forwarding.)

To deactivate Call Forwarding:

1. Touch  > .
2. Touch  **7** PQRS **2** ABC **0** +.
3. Touch **CALL**. (You will see a message and hear a tone to confirm the deactivation.)

## Call History

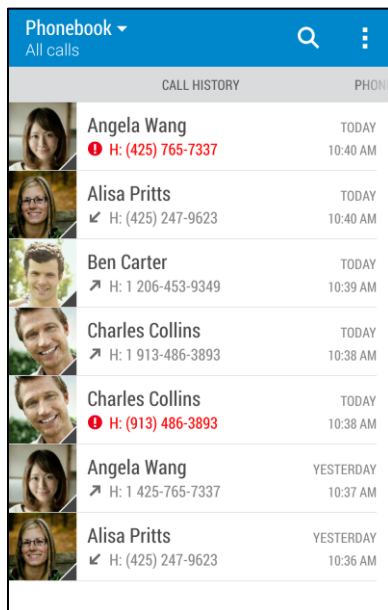
Call history lists all recent incoming, outgoing, and missed calls. Call history makes redialing a number fast and easy. It is continually updated as your phone automatically adds new numbers to the beginning of the list.

**Note:** Call history records only calls that occur while the phone is turned on. If a call is received while your phone is turned off, it will not be included in History.

### Open Call History

Access your Call history to quickly call someone back or see who you have talked to recently.

1. Touch  > .
2. Swipe to view the **CALL HISTORY** tab. Each entry contains the phone number (if it is available) and the contact name (if the number is in People).



3. Do any of the following:
  - Touch a name or number in the list to call. See [Call From Call History](#).

- Touch and hold a name or number in the list to display the options menu.
- Touch a contact photo to find more ways of getting in touch with the contact.
- Touch ▼ to display only a particular type of call such as missed calls or outgoing calls.

## *Save a Number From Call History*

If the phone number of a person who called is not in People, you can choose to save the number after you hang up.

1. Touch  >  > **CALL HISTORY** tab.
2. Touch  and choose whether to create a new contact or save the number to an existing contact.

**Note:** You cannot save phone numbers already in People or from calls identified as **No ID** or **Restricted**.

## *Prepend a Number From Call History*

If you need to make a call from the Call history and you are outside your local area code, you can add the appropriate prefix by prepending the number.

1. Touch  >  > **CALL HISTORY** tab.
2. Touch and hold the entry you want to call and touch **Edit number before calling**.
3. Enter the prefix and touch **CALL** to call the number.

## *Block a Caller*

When you block a phone number or a contact, all calls from the phone number or contact will be declined automatically.

1. Touch  >  > **CALL HISTORY** tab.
2. Touch and hold the contact or phone number you want to block, and then touch **Block contact** > **OK**.

**Note:** To remove a caller from your blocked list, on the **CALL HISTORY** tab, touch  > **Blocked contacts**. Touch and hold a contact, and then touch **Unblock contacts**.

## *Erase Call History*

If the Call history becomes long, you can delete an entry or the entire Call history list.

1. Touch  >  > **CALL HISTORY** tab.

2. Do either of the following:

- To delete a Call history entry, touch and hold the entry, and then touch **Delete from call history**.
- To erase the entire Call history list, touch  > **Remove call history**. Touch  > **Select all**, and then touch **DELETE**.

## Change Ringtone Settings

You can change how your phone alerts you when you receive calls.

### Switch Between Silent, Vibrate, and Normal Modes

- Do one of the following:
  - To change from silent to normal mode, press the **Volume up** button.
  - To change from vibrate to normal mode, press the **Volume up** button twice.
  - With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Sound** > **Sound profile**.

### Lower the Ring Volume Automatically

Your phone has a quiet ring feature that automatically lowers the ring volume when you move it.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Sound**.
2. Select the **Quiet ring on pickup** option.

### Make Your Phone Ring Louder in Your Pocket or Bag

To help avoid missing incoming calls when your phone is in your pocket or bag, the pocket mode feature gradually increases the ring volume and vibrates when you receive a call.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Sound**.
2. Select the **Pocket mode** option.

## Visual Voicemail

Visual Voicemail gives you a quick and easy way to access your voicemail. Now you can find exactly the message you are looking for without having to listen to every voicemail message first. This new feature periodically goes out to your voicemail, and gathers the caller information from all of the current voicemails. It then populates a list with the caller name and number, along with the length of time and priority level of the voicemail message.



## Set Up Visual Voicemail

Your phone automatically transfers all unanswered calls to your voicemail, even if your phone is in use or turned off. You should set up your Sprint voicemail and personal greeting as soon as your phone is activated.

**Note:** To set up your traditional voicemail box, see [Set Up Voicemail](#).

1. Touch  >  > **Voicemail**.
2. Touch **Personalize now** and follow the voice prompts to:
  - Create a password (part of standard voicemail).
  - Record your name announcement.
  - Record your greeting.
3. When prompted to enter information, use the onscreen dialpad to enter your numeric responses.

**Important: Voicemail Password** – Sprint strongly recommends that you create a password when setting up your voicemail to help protect against unauthorized access. Without a password, anyone who has access to your phone is able to access your voicemail messages.

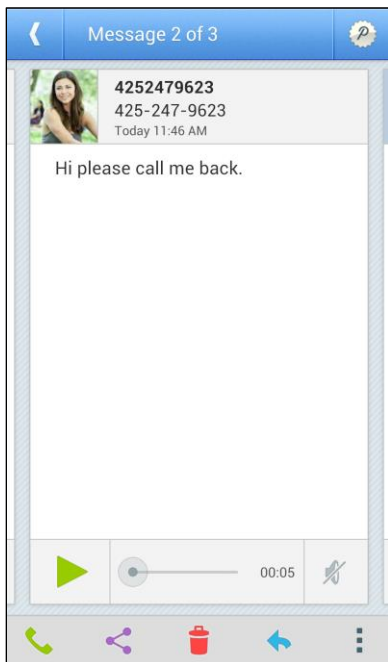
4. Once you have completed the setup process, return to the voicemail page (see step 1).
5. Touch the **Welcome to Voicemail** message on the screen to play a brief explanation of the voicemail services.

## Review Visual Voicemail

Visual Voicemail lets you easily access and select which messages you want to review.

1. Touch  >  > **Voicemail**.

2. Touch a message.



3. While reviewing a voicemail message, you can:

- Touch  to play or  to pause the voicemail.
- Touch  > **Archive** to save the message.
- Touch and drag the timeline to scrub through the message to different points.
- Touch  to call the person who left the voicemail message.
- Touch  to reply to the message. You can choose to reply via a text or audio message.
- Touch  or  to turn the speakerphone on or off during playback. If the speakerphone feature was enabled in Settings, the speakerphone will always be automatically enabled during voicemail playback.
- Touch  to delete the current voicemail message.
- Touch  > **Help** to learn more about this application.

## ***Voicemail (Traditional)***

In addition to Visual Voicemail, your phone and Sprint service always offer traditional voicemail service accessed through the Phone application.

## ***Voicemail Notification***

There are several ways your phone alerts you to a new message.

- By sounding the assigned ringer type.
- By displaying  in the Notifications area of the status bar when a single new unheard voicemail message is received.
- By flashing the front indicator light (LED), if enabled.

**Note:** Your phone accepts messages even when it is turned off. However, your phone notifies you of new messages only when it is turned on and you are in a Sprint service area.

## ***Set Up Voicemail***

Your phone automatically transfers all unanswered calls to your voicemail, even if your phone is in use or turned off. You should set up your Sprint voicemail and personal greeting as soon as your phone is activated. Always use a password to help protect against unauthorized access.

1. Touch  > .
2. Touch and hold  to dial your voicemail number.
3. Follow the system prompts to:
  - Create your password.
  - Record your name announcement.
  - Record your greeting.

**Important: Voicemail Password** – Sprint strongly recommends that you create a password when setting up your voicemail to help protect against unauthorized access. Without a password, anyone who has access to your phone is able to access your voicemail messages.

## ***Retrieve Your Voicemail Messages***

You can review your messages directly from your wireless phone (using either traditional voicemail or Visual Voicemail) or from any other touch-tone phone.

### **Use Traditional Voicemail to Access Your Messages**

1. Touch  > .
2. Touch and hold  to dial your voicemail number.
3. Follow the voice prompts to listen to and manage your voicemail messages.

## Use Another Phone to Access Your Messages

1. Dial your wireless phone number.
2. When your voicemail answers, press the asterisk key (\*) on the phone.
3. Enter your password.

**Tip:** When you call voicemail from another phone, you first hear the header information (date, time, and sender information) for the message. To skip directly to the message, touch  during the header.

**Note:** Depending on your plan, you may be charged for airtime minutes when you are accessing your voicemail from your wireless phone.

## Internet Calls

When you're connected to a Wi-Fi network, you can make and receive calls through an Internet calling account.

**Note:** Before you add an Internet calling account, make sure that you've registered with an Internet calling service that supports voice calls over Session Initiation Protocol (SIP). Internet calls to phone numbers may incur additional fees.

### Add an Internet Calling Account

You must add an Internet calling account before you can make Internet calls.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Call**.
2. Under Internet call settings, touch **Accounts**.
3. Touch **ADD ACCOUNT**.
4. Enter your account details.
5. Touch  > **Save**.
6. To set your phone to receive Internet calls on your added account, select the **Receive incoming calls** option.

### Make an Internet Call

Make an Internet call to either your contact's Internet calling account or phone number.

- **Internet calling account**
  - In People, touch a contact who has an Internet calling account, and then touch **Internet call**.

- In Call History, touch an Internet call log.
- **Phone number.** First, enable Internet calling for your outgoing calls. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Call**. Touch **Use Internet calling**, and then select either **For all calls when data network is available** or **Ask for each call**.

# People

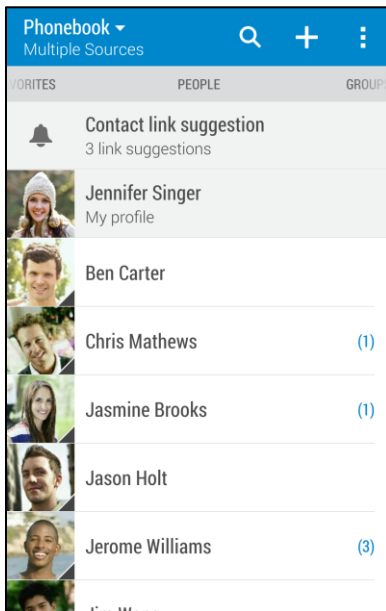
---

In People, you can easily manage your communications with contacts through phone, messaging, email, and social networks. And, if you have the same contacts from different sources, you can merge their contact information so you won't have duplicate entries.

## Your People List

The People app lists all contacts stored on your phone and from the online accounts you're logged in to.

1. Touch  >  > **People**.



**Tip:** You can also access People through the Phone app. Touch  >  and then swipe left until you reach the **PEOPLE** tab.

2. You can:
  - View your profile and edit your contact information.
  - Create, edit, find, or send contacts.
  - Touch a contact photo to find ways to quickly connect with the contact.
  - See when a contact has sent you new messages.

**Tip:** To sort your contacts by their first or last name, touch  > **Settings** > **Sort contacts by**.

## Filter Your People List

When your contacts list gets long, you can choose which contact accounts to show.

1. On the **PEOPLE** tab, touch  on the top bar.
2. Select the online accounts that contain the contacts you want to display.
3. Touch .

## Find People

Search for contacts stored on your phone, your company directory if you have an Exchange ActiveSync account, or social networks you've signed into.

1. Touch  >  > **People**.
2. On the **PEOPLE** tab, you can:
  - Find people in your contacts list. Touch , and then enter the first few letters of the contact name in the **Search people** box.
  - Find people on your company directory. Touch , enter the first few letters of the contact name in the **Search people** box, and then touch **Search contacts in your Company Directory**.
  - Search for people you know on your social networks. Touch  > **Settings** > **Find people you know on**, and then select the social networks you're signed in to. The People app then uploads your contacts to the selected social networks to help you find friends.

**Tip:** Aside from searching for a contact by name, you can search using a contact's email address or company name. On the **PEOPLE** tab, touch  > **Settings** > **Search contacts by**, and then choose a search criteria.

## Set Up Your Profile

Your profile stores your personal contact information in an easy-to-access location.

1. Touch  >  > **People** > **My profile**.
2. Touch **Edit my contact card**.
3. Enter or edit your name and contact details.
4. Touch your current profile photo or icon to change it.
5. Touch **SAVE**.

6. Aside from your contact details, your profile also shows updates you've posted on your social networks.

## Add Entries to the People App

You can add new contacts to the People app or add existing ones from your social network or Exchange ActiveSync accounts.

### Add a New People Entry

Start adding your contacts on your phone. If you've set up an email account on your phone, you can sync your new contacts with that account.

1. Touch  >  > **People**.
2. Touch .
3. Touch the Name field, and then enter the contact name.

**Note:** Touch  to separately enter the contact's given, middle, and family, and name suffix (such as Jr.).

4. Select the Contact type. This determines which account the contact will sync with.
5. Enter the contact information in the fields provided.
6. Touch **SAVE**.

When you touch the added contact on your contacts list, you'll see the contact information and your exchange of messages and calls. Depending on the information that you've added to the contact (such as an email address), you'll also be able to see the contact's social network updates, events, and photos.

#### Tip: ICE - In Case of Emergency

To make it easier for emergency personnel to identify important contacts, you can list your local emergency contacts under "ICE" in your phone's People list. For example, if your mother is your primary emergency contact, list her as "ICE-Mom" in your Contacts. To list more than one emergency contact, use "ICE1-\_\_\_\_," "ICE2-\_\_\_\_," etc.

#### Add an Extension Number to a Contact Number

While creating a new contact in People, you can add an extension number to their number so you can skip the voice prompts when calling.

**Note:** You must use the HTC Sense Keyboard to find these keys.

1. After entering the number of the main line, do one of the following:



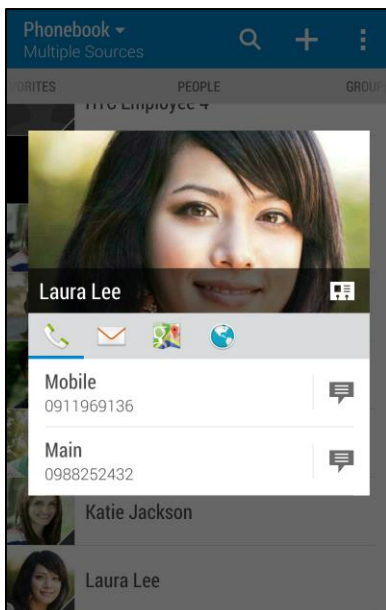
- Touch **P()** to insert a pause before the extension number is dialed automatically. To make the pause longer, touch **P()** again.
- Touch **W()** to be prompted to confirm the extension number.

2. Enter the extension number.

## Get In Touch with a Contact

Choose the best way to connect with your contacts.

1. Touch  >  > **People**.
2. Touch a contact's photo (not the name), and then choose how you want to get in touch with that contact.



**Tip:** For more ways of getting in touch with your contact, touch an icon below the contact photo.

## Manage People Entries

Make sure your contacts' information are up to date. You can edit or delete an entry in People.

### Edit a People Entry

You can add another phone number, email address, or assign a photo to a contact in People.

**Note:** Facebook and Twitter contacts cannot be edited.

1. On the **PEOPLE** tab, touch and hold the contact, and then touch **Edit contact**.
2. Enter the new information.

3. Touch **SAVE**.

## *Delete an Entry*

Follow these steps to delete an entry in your contacts list.

1. On the **PEOPLE** tab, touch and hold the contact, and then touch **Delete contact**.
2. Touch **OK** to confirm.

## *Delete Multiple Entries*

Clean up your contacts list by deleting entries that you no longer need.

1. On the **PEOPLE** tab, touch  > **Delete contacts**.
2. Select the entries you want to delete, and then touch **DELETE**.

## *Import or Copy Contacts*

It's easy to import or copy contacts from your online accounts and save them directly to your phone.

### **Import a Contact from an Exchange ActiveSync Account**

1. On the **PEOPLE** tab, touch  and enter the contact's name or email address in the search box.
2. Touch **Search contacts in your Company Directory**.
3. Touch the name of the contact you want copied to your phone.
4. Touch  to save the contact to your Exchange ActiveSync account.

### **Copy Contacts from One Account to Another**

1. On the **PEOPLE** tab, touch  > **Manage contacts**.
2. Touch **Copy contacts**, and then choose a contact type or online account to copy from.
3. Select a contact type or account you want to save to.

**Note:** Contacts from your social network accounts may not be copied.

## *Merge Entries in People*

If you have the same contacts on your phone, Google Account, and social network accounts such as Facebook and Twitter, your phone will try to combine them automatically or let you decide which contacts to combine. Combining the same contacts avoids duplicated entries in your contacts list.

## Accept Contact Link Suggestions

When your phone finds contacts that can be merged, you'll see a link notification when you open the People app.

1. On the **PEOPLE** tab, touch the **Contact link suggestion** notification when available. You'll see a list of suggested contacts to merge.
2. Navigate to the contact you want to merge.
3. Touch  to merge. Otherwise, touch  to ignore the contact link suggestion.

**Note:** If you don't want to receive contact link suggestions, on the **PEOPLE** tab, touch  > **Settings**. Clear the **Suggest contact link** option.

## Manually Merge Entries

You can merge your entries manually and choose the accounts to link the contact.

1. On the **PEOPLE** tab, touch the name of the contact (not the icon or photo) you want to link.
2. Touch  > **Link**.
3. You can:
  - Under Suggest links, touch  to link the contact to an account.
  - Under Add contact, touch one of the options to link to another contact.
4. Touch **DONE** to save the change.

## Break the Link

When contact information has changed, you can choose to break the contact's link from another account

1. On the **PEOPLE** tab, touch the name of the contact (not the icon or photo) whose link you want to break.
2. Touch  > **Link**.
3. Under the Linked contacts section, touch  beside an account to break the link.
4. Touch **DONE** to save the change.

## Send Contact Information

Quickly share your contact card or People entries on your phone.

1. Touch  >  > **People**.

2. Do any of the following:
  - To send someone's contact information, touch and hold the name of the contact (not the icon or photo), and then touch **Send contact as vCard**.
  - To send your contact information, touch and hold **My profile**, and then touch **Send my profile**.
3. Choose how you want to send the vCard.
4. Select the type of information you want to send.
5. Touch **SEND**.

### Send Multiple People Entries

1. Touch  >  > **People**.
2. Touch  > **Send contacts**.
3. Select the contacts whose contact information you want to share.
4. Touch **SEND**.
5. Choose how you want to send the contact cards.

### Share All Visible Contacts

You can share all entries that appear in your contacts list, regardless of the online account that your contacts sync with.

1. Touch  >  > **People**.
2. Touch  > **Manage contacts** > **Import/Export contacts** > **Share visible contacts**.
3. Choose how you want to send your contacts.

## Contact Groups

Organize your friends, family, and colleagues into groups so you can quickly send a message or email to everyone in the group. We've also set up the Frequent group to automatically add the contacts you dial or get calls from the most.

Your phone also syncs with groups you've created in your Google Account.

### Create a Group

Create a group for your sporting buddies or family members so you can easily send them a message or email.

1. Touch  >  > **People**.
2. On the **GROUPS** tab, touch .
3. Enter a name for the group.
4. Touch  > **Add contact to group**.
5. Select the contacts you want to add, and then touch **SAVE**.
6. When your group is complete, touch **SAVE**.

## *Send a Message or Email to a Group*

Easily send a message or email to all members of the group.

1. Touch  >  > **People**.
2. On the **GROUPS** tab, touch the group you want to send a message or email to.
3. Go to the **GROUP ACTION** tab.
4. Choose if you want to send a text message or email.
5. Follow the prompts to complete and send the group message or group mail. See [Send a Text Message \(SMS\)](#), [Send a New Gmail Message](#), or [Send an Email Message](#).

## *Edit a Contact Group*

You have full control of your groups. Change the group name or add and remove group members from the People app.

1. Touch  >  > **People**.
2. On the **GROUPS** tab, touch and hold the group, and then touch **Edit group**.
3. You can:
  - Touch the group name to change the name. You can only change the name for groups that you have created.
  - Touch  > **Add contact to group** to add more members.
  - To rearrange the group members, drag  at the end of the contact's name to its new position.
  - Select the check box next to any contacts you want to remove from the group.
4. Touch **SAVE**.

## Manage Your Contact Groups

Put your favorite group at the top of the groups' list or delete groups that you don't need.

1. Touch  >  > **People**.
2. On the **GROUPS** tab, touch  > **Edit groups**.
3. You can:
  - Rearrange the contact groups. Drag  at the end of the group name to its new position.
  - Select the contact groups you want to remove.
4. Touch **SAVE**.

## Back Up and Restore Your Contacts

Make sure you don't lose your contacts by backing them up to your phone's storage or microSD card (if you inserted one).

### Back Up Contacts

1. Touch  >  > **People**.
2. Touch  > **Manage contacts**.
3. Touch **Import/Export contacts** > **Export to phone storage** or **Export to SD card**.
4. Select an account or type of contacts to export.
5. To help protect your data, touch **Yes**, and then set a password for this backup. Be sure to remember this password. You'll need to enter it again when importing contacts. If you don't need a password, touch **No**.
6. Touch **OK**.

### Restore Contacts

**Note:** You can only restore contacts that were backed up using the **Export to phone storage** feature.

1. Touch  >  > **People**.
2. Touch  > **Manage contacts**.
3. Touch **Import/Export contacts** > **Import from phone storage** or **Import from SD card**.

4. If you have more than one account set up, touch the type for the imported contacts.
5. If you have multiple backups available, select the backup you want to import, and then touch **OK**.
6. Enter the password you've set for this backup, and then touch **OK**.

## *Private Contacts*

If you don't want to show a contact's name and photo on the lock screen when you have an incoming call, add the contact to your private contacts list.

### Add a Contact to the Private Contacts List

1. Touch  >  > People.
2. Touch and hold the contact, and then touch **Add to private contacts**.
3. To view your private contacts list, on the **People** tab, touch  > **Manage contacts** > **Private contacts**.

### Organize Your Private Contacts

1. On the **People** tab, touch  > **Manage contacts** > **Private contacts**.
2. To add contacts to the private contacts list, touch , select the contacts you want to add, and then touch **SAVE**.
3. To remove private contacts from the list, touch  > **Remove private contact**, select the contacts you want to remove, and then touch **REMOVE**.

# Accounts and Messaging

---

With Sprint service and your phone's messaging capabilities, you have the opportunity to share information through many different channels and accounts.

## Gmail

You will need a Google Account to access several phone features such as Gmail, Google Maps™, and Google Play. Before you are able to access Google applications, you must enter your account information. These applications sync between your phone and your online Google Account.

## Create a Google Account

If you do not already have a Google Account, you can create one online or using your phone.

**Note:** You can also create and sign into your Google Account or Gmail through your phone's Setup application.

**Note:** Although you need a Gmail account to use certain features of your phone, such as Google Play, you do not need to use Gmail as the default account for your phone.

### Create a Google Account Online

1. From a computer, launch a Web browser and navigate to [google.com](http://google.com).
2. On the main page, click **Sign in > Create an account**.
3. Follow the onscreen prompts to create your free account.
4. Look for an email from Google in the email box you provided, and respond to the email to confirm and activate your new account.

### Create a Google Account Using Your Phone

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Accounts & sync**.
2. Touch  > **Google > New**.
3. Enter your first name and last name, and then touch .
4. Enter your desired email address, and then touch .
5. When prompted, enter and re-enter a password, and touch .



6. In the Google Password Recovery screen, choose whether to set up your recovery options in case you forgot your account password or touch **Not now** to do this later.

**Note:** When setting up a new Google Account, either on your phone or online, you will be prompted to add a secondary email address. Enter a second Gmail address or any other email address from which you currently send and receive email. This address is used to authenticate your account should you ever encounter problems or forget your password. It is strongly encouraged for Android users so you can regain access to Google services and purchases on your phone.

7. Select whether you want to receive news and offers from Google Play, and touch ►.
8. Select whether Enter a secondary email address to help you recover your password if you ever lose it and then select a security question. Touch ►.
9. On the Finish account screen, touch **I accept**.
10. Enter the text you see on the screen, and then touch ►.
11. Select whether you want to join Google+ or touch **Not now** to proceed.
12. After your phone connects with the Google servers, select the items you would like to sync with your phone, and then touch ►. Your phone will synchronize the selected items.

## *Sign In to Your Google Account*

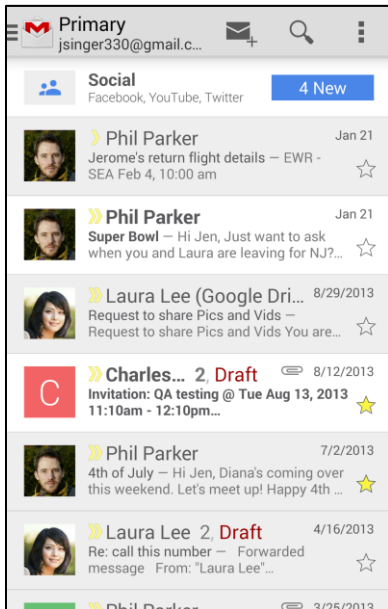
If you have a Google Account but have not yet signed in with your phone, follow these instructions to sign in to your Google Account.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Accounts & sync**.
2. Touch  > **Google > Existing**.
3. Enter your Google Account address and password, and then touch ►.
4. After your phone connects with the Google servers, select the items you would like to sync with your phone and then touch ►.

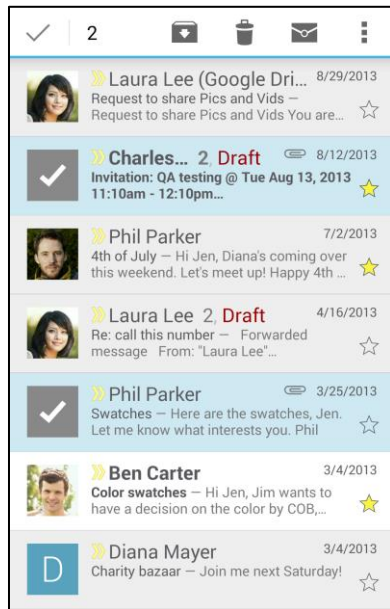
## *View Your Gmail Inbox*

All your received emails are delivered to your Inbox.

1. Touch  >  > **Gmail**.



2. Do any of the following from your Inbox.
  - Touch an email message (not the sender image or letter tile) to read, forward, or reply to the message.
  - Touch an inbox category (for example, **Primary**) at the top bar to switch to your other Gmail account or to display drafts, sent messages, or other email labels and categories.
  - Touch the sender image or letter tile to select one or more messages or conversations. You can then touch the onscreen buttons at the top bar to archive, delete, or mark the selected messages or conversations.



**Tip:** Get help in using Gmail by touching  > **Help**.

## Send a New Gmail Message

Create and send an email message from your Gmail account.

1. Touch  >  > **Gmail**.
2. In the inbox of the Gmail account you want to use, touch .
3. Fill in one or more recipients.

**Note:** If you want to send a carbon copy (Cc) or a blind carbon copy (Bcc) of the email to other recipients, touch  > **Add Cc/Bcc**.

4. Enter the email subject, and then compose your email.
5. If you want to attach a photo, video, or file, touch  > **Attach file**, select the source of the attachment, and then select the file to attach.
6. Touch  to send.

**Note:** While composing the message, touch  twice to save it as a draft. To discard the message, touch  > **Discard**.

## Reply To or Forward an Email Message

Use your Gmail account to reply to or forward email messages.

1. Touch  >  > **Gmail**.

2. Touch the email message or conversation.
3. To reply to the sender, touch . Or, touch  and choose whether to **Reply all** or **Forward**.
4. Do one of the following:
  - If you are replying to the sender or you selected **Reply all**, enter your reply message.
  - If you selected **Forward**, specify the message recipients.

**Note:** Touch **Respond inline** if you want to interleave your new message with the received email. However, this removes any attachments or formatting in the original email message.

5. Touch  to send.

## Add a Gmail Account

If you have two or more Gmail accounts, you can add them on your phone and easily switch between accounts in Gmail.

- To add another Gmail account, see [Add One or More Google Accounts](#).

## Get Help with Gmail

Find out more how to use Gmail.

- In the Gmail inbox, touch  > **Help**.

## Email

Use the Mail application to send and receive email from your webmail or other emails accounts using POP3 or IMAP. You can also access your Exchange ActiveSync email and other features on your phone. Mail allows you to stay connected 24 hours a day anywhere.

## Add an Email Account

Set up email accounts such as Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync account or an account from a Web-based email service or email provider.

**Important:** If you're adding a Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync or a POP3/IMAP email account, ask your network administrator or email service provider for additional email settings that you may need.

1. Touch  >  > **Mail**.
2. Select an email account type from the list of email providers. Otherwise, if you've already added an email account during the setup process, touch  > **Add account**.

**Tip:** You can also set up an email account from the Accounts & sync menu. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Accounts & sync** > .

3. Enter the email address and password for your email account, and then touch **Next**. If you have custom settings for your account, touch **Manual setup** and follow the prompts.

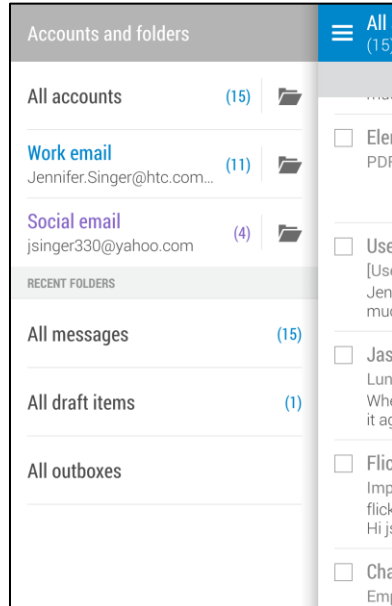
**Note:** Some email accounts allow you to set the sync schedule. By default, your phone uses Smart Sync to save battery power. See [Use Smart Sync](#).

4. Enter a name for your email account, and then touch **FINISH SETUP**.

## Check Your Mail Inbox

When you open the Mail application, it displays the inbox of one of your email accounts that you've set up on your phone.

1. Touch  >  > **Mail**. The inbox of one of your email accounts appears.
2. Do any of the following:
  - Touch an email message to read.
  - To switch between email accounts or view email messages from all your accounts, touch .



- To display email messages in another mail folder, touch  > **Folder**, and then touch the folder you want to view.
- To refresh the inbox, pull down the screen.

- To change an email account's settings, select the account and then touch  > **Settings**.

## Organize Your Inbox

Organize your email messages into tabs and quickly find the messages you want.

1. Touch  >  > **Mail**.
2. Switch to the email account that you want to use.
3. In the inbox, touch  > **Edit tabs**.
4. Select the tabs you want to add to the inbox.
5. To arrange the tabs, drag , and then move the tab to its new location.
6. Touch **DONE**.
7. Swipe to the added tab to check your email messages.

## Send an Email Message

Send an email message to your contacts using an email account in Mail.

1. Touch  >  > **Mail**.
2. Switch to the email account that you want to use.
3. Touch .
4. Fill in one or more recipients.

**Tip:** If you want to send a carbon copy (Cc) or a blind carbon copy (Bcc) of the email to other recipients, touch  > **Show Cc/Bcc**.

5. Enter the subject, and then compose your message.
6. Do any of the following:
  - Add an attachment. Touch  and then choose what you want to attach.
  - Set the priority for an important message. Touch  > **Set priority**.
7. Touch , or to send it later, touch  > **Save**.

**Note:** If there's no Wi-Fi or data connection available or Airplane mode is on when you send your email, the email is saved to the Outbox folder. Once there's Wi-Fi or data connection available, the saved email will be sent automatically next time your phone syncs.

## Resume a Draft Email Message

1. Touch  >  > **Mail**.
2. In an email account inbox, touch  > **Folder** > **Drafts**.
3. Touch the message.
4. When you finish editing the message, touch .

## Read and Reply to an Email Message

Read email messages and reply them promptly in the Mail app.

1. Touch  >  > **Mail**.
2. Switch to the email account that you want to use.
3. In the email account inbox, touch the email you want to read.

**Note:** If you want to read a particular message inside an email conversation, touch  to expand the conversation, and then touch the email message.

4. Touch **REPLY** or **REPLY ALL**.

**Tip:** Touch  for more actions for the email.

## Quickly Reply to an Email Message

You can quickly respond to a new email message from the Home screen or lock screen.

1. When you receive a new email message notification, slide the Notifications panel down.
2. On the email preview, touch **REPLY ALL** or **FORWARD**.

**Note:** If you have several notifications and you don't see the email options, expand the email preview by sliding two fingers apart on the notification.

3. Compose your reply message and touch .

## Save an Image in an Email Message

While viewing an email message, touch and hold an embedded image, and then touch **Save image**. You'll find the saved image in the **Downloads** folder.

You can also copy the image to the clipboard or set it as your wallpaper.

## Save an Email Message in Tasks

Save an email message in your Tasks list so you can remind yourself when to reply.

1. Touch  >  > **Mail**.
2. In an email account inbox, touch and hold the email message, and then touch **Save as task**.
3. On the New task screen, enter the task details, and then touch **SAVE**.

## Manage Email Messages

The Mail app provides easy ways to sort, move, or delete your email messages.

### Sort Email Messages

Customize how you sort your email messages.

- In an email account inbox, touch  > **Sort**, and select from the sorting options.

### Move Email Messages to Another Folder

1. Touch  >  > **Mail**.
2. Switch to the email account that you want to use.
3. Select the email messages you want to move.

**Tip:** To select all, select one email message first, and then touch  > **Select all**.

4. Touch **MOVE TO** and then select a folder.

### Delete Email Messages

1. Touch  >  > **Mail**.
2. Switch to the email account that you want to use.
3. Select the email messages you want to delete.

**Tip:** To select all, select one email message first, and then touch  > **Select all**.

4. Touch **DELETE** > **OK**.

## Search Email Messages

If you have a long list of email messages on your inbox, you can easily search for that important email.

1. Touch  >  > **Mail**.
2. Touch .



3. If you want to refine or filter your search, touch , check the search options, and then touch **OK**. For example, you can focus the search on a part of an email or filter email messages that have attachments or tagged as high priority.
4. In the search box, enter the words you want to search for.
5. Touch a result to open the email message.

## Search Emails From a Contact

Search emails from a contact when you remember the sender, but can't find that particular message.

1. Touch  >  > **Mail**.
2. Switch to the email account you want to use.
3. Touch and hold an email message from a contact.
4. Touch **Show all mail from sender**. A list of email messages from that contact appears.

## Work with Exchange ActiveSync Email

Enjoy the powerful email features of Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync right on your phone. Flag important email messages, set your out of the office reply, or send invites to your next team meeting while you're on the go.

### Flag Email Messages

1. Touch  >  > **Mail**.
2. Switch to your Exchange ActiveSync email account.
3. While viewing your Exchange ActiveSync email inbox, touch the flag icon that appears on the right of an email message or conversation. The icon turns red after you flagged the email or conversation.

**Tip:** To flag an email message inside a conversation, touch  to expand the conversation, and then touch the flag icon of the email message.

### Set Your Out of Office Status

You can set your Out of Office status and auto-reply message right from your phone.

1. Touch  >  > **Mail**.
2. Switch to your Exchange ActiveSync email account.
3. Touch  > **Out of the office**.

4. Touch your current office status, and then select **Out of the office**.
5. Set the dates and times for the period when you will be out of the office.
6. Enter the auto-reply message.
7. If you want a different auto-reply message for recipients outside your organization, select the **Send replies to external senders** option, and then enter the auto-reply message in the box that appears.
8. Touch **SAVE**.

### Send a Meeting Request

1. Touch  >  > **Mail**.
2. Switch to your Exchange ActiveSync email account.
3. Touch  > **New meeting invitation**.
4. Enter the meeting details.
5. Touch **SAVE**. Or touch **SEND** if you've invited people to the meeting.

### Delete an Email Account

Delete an email account from your phone if you want to discontinue using that account.

1. Touch  >  > **Mail**.
2. Switch to the email account that you want to delete.
3. Touch  > **Settings** > **Delete account**.
4. Touch **OK** to confirm.

### Use Smart Sync

Smart Sync automatically extends the sync time the longer the Mail app is inactive. Set your email account to Smart Sync when you don't need to check new email messages frequently. Smart Sync helps save battery power.

1. Touch  >  > **Mail**.
2. Switch to the email account where you want to use Smart Sync.
3. Touch  > **Settings** > **Sync, Send & Receive**.
4. Touch **Peak time sync** > **Smart Sync**.
5. Touch **Off-peak sync** > **Smart Sync**.

6. Touch .

Smart Sync then extends the email synchronization time after each auto sync time passes and you don't open the Mail app. To sync your email at any time, open the Mail app and check your inbox.

If you want to receive email messages as they arrive, select another peak and off-peak sync schedule in the email account's **Sync, Send & Receive** settings.

## *Change the Email Account Settings*

Change your email account settings such as the email account name and password, signature, sync schedule, and more.

1. Touch  >  > **Mail**.
2. Switch to the email account you want to change.
3. Touch  > **Settings**, and choose from these options:
  - **Account settings:** Change the email account settings such as the name, email address, password, and description.
  - **General settings**
    - **Mail body font size:** Set the font size when reading email messages.
    - **Use signature:** Select to append a signature to your outgoing email messages.
    - **Signature:** Set the signature for outgoing email messages.
    - **Set as default account:** Select to use the current email account as the default account to send email messages.
    - **Attachment cache:** Select where to cache email attachments.
    - **Ask before deleting:** Select to display a confirmation box when deleting email messages.
    - **Portrait body preview:** Set the number of lines of text to display for email messages in the inbox.
    - **Show threaded view:** Select to group messages and related replies into threads.
    - **Clear search history.** Clears your email search history.
  - **Sync, Send & Receive**
    - **Peak time sync:** Set the synchronization schedule during your set peak time.

- **Peak time:** Set the time when you receive the most number of email messages.
  - **Off-peak sync:** Set the synchronization schedule during your set off-peak time.
  - **Download past mail** or **Download options** (POP email): Set how many days or number of emails to download past email messages.
  - **Refresh on open:** Select to automatically download email messages when you open an email folder.
  - **Folder to sync:** Select the folder to synchronize whenever you launch Mail.
  - **Sync deleted items from server** (POP email only): Select to remove messages from your phone when they're deleted from the mail server.
  - **Mail size limit:** Set the maximum email file size for incoming messages.
  - **Message format** (Exchange ActiveSync email only): Set email messages to display in HTML or plain text format.
  - **Include file attachment** (Exchange ActiveSync email only): Set the size of email attachments that will be automatically downloaded with email messages.
  - **Reply with original text:** Select to include the original email text when replying.
  - **Delete mail on server** (POP email only): Select to remove mail from the server when you delete it on your phone.
  - **Always bcc me:** Select to always send yourself a copy of all email messages that you send.
  - **Notification settings**
    - **Email notifications:** Select to turn on email notifications on your phone.
    - **Play notification sound:** Set the phone to play a sound when a new email message arrives.
    - **Notification sound:** Select the sound to play when a new email message arrives.
    - **Vibrate:** Set the phone to vibrate when a new email message arrives.
  - **Delete account:** Touch to delete the email account.
4. Touch  to save your changes.

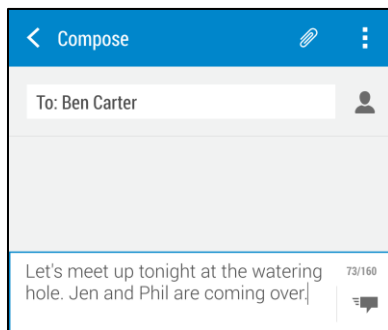
## Text Messaging and MMS

Use the Messages app to compose and send text and multimedia messages. On the Messages screen, your sent and received messages are neatly grouped into conversations, by contact name or phone number.

### Send a Text Message (SMS)

Quickly compose and send text messages on your phone.

1. Touch  > .
2. Touch .
3. Enter a contact name or mobile number in the To field.
4. Touch the "Add text" box and then start composing your message.



5. Touch  to send, or touch  to save the message as a draft.

**Note:** There is a limit on the number of characters for a single text message (displayed above ). If you exceed the limit, your text message will be delivered as one but will be billed as more than one message.

**Note:** Your text message automatically becomes a multimedia message if you enter an email address as the recipient, add a message subject, attach an item, or compose a very long message.

### Send a Multimedia Message (MMS)

When you need to add a little more to a text message, you can send a multimedia message (MMS) with pictures, voice recordings, audio or video files, contact cards (vCard), or appointments (vCalendar).

1. Touch  > .
2. Touch .
3. Enter a contact name, mobile number, or email address in the To field.

**Tip:** If only phone numbers are showing up when you're entering a contact name, touch , and then touch  > **Show Email**.

4. To add a subject line, touch  > **Add subject** to add a subject line to your message.
5. Touch the "Add text" box, and then start composing your message.
6. Touch  and then select an attachment type.

**Tip:** Record videos with minimum resolution so you can reduce the file size of your attachments. For details, see [Change Camera and Video Settings](#).

7. Select or browse for the attachment to attach.
8. After adding an attachment, touch  to see options for replacing, viewing or removing your attachment.
9. Touch  to send, or touch  to save the message as a draft.

**Note:** Depending on the resolution of your photo or video attachments, they may be displayed as cropped thumbnails in your multimedia message.

## Create a Slideshow

You can create an MMS message with multiple slides, each containing a photo, video, or audio, and text.

1. After you've added either a photo, video, or audio in the multimedia message you're composing, touch  > **Slide**.
2. Choose where you want to insert the next slide.
3. Right after adding a slide, do one of the following:
  - Touch , and then choose to add a photo or a video.
  - Touch  > **Audio** to add music or a voice recording to a slide.
  - Touch **Add text**, and then enter your caption.
  - Touch  to see options for replacing, viewing, or removing your attachment.
4. Touch  > **Preview**. Touch once on the preview screen to see playback controls.
5. When finished, touch  to send, or touch  to save the message as a draft.

## Send a Group Message

Group messaging makes it easy to send a message to multiple contacts all at once. You can choose to send a group SMS or group MMS.

**Note:** You will be charged for each text message sent. For example, if you send a message to a group of five people, you will be charged for five messages.

**Note:** Group MMS may incur extra data fees.

1. Touch  > .
2. Touch .
3. Touch , select multiple recipients, and then touch **DONE**. You can also swipe to the **GROUP** tab and select a contact group.
4. To send a group SMS, make sure that **Send as individual messages** is selected. Clear this option to send your message as a group MMS.
  - **Group SMS.** Your message will be sent to the recipients as a text message and each message sent will be charged to your allocated text message plan. Replies of your recipients are sorted separately.
  - **Group MMS.** Similar to a group chat, sending a group MMS lets your recipients join the conversation you've started. Your phone also organizes message replies in a single conversation thread. If this is your first time to send a group MMS, you may need to enter your mobile phone number.
5. Touch the "Add text" box, and then start composing your message.
6. Touch  to send, or touch  to save the message as a draft.

## Group MMS FAQs

### Why can't my recipients see or join the group MMS I sent to them?

Check whether your recipients have enabled Group messaging on their mobile devices. Some devices or mobile operators may not support this feature.

### How do I receive or block group MMS?

In Message settings, touch **Multimedia messages (MMS)**, and then turn **Group Messaging** on or off.

## Save and Resume Composing a Draft Message

While composing a text or multimedia message, touch  to automatically save your message as a draft. You can resume composing a draft message.

1. Touch  > .
2. Open a draft message, edit the message, and then touch .

**Tip:** To see all draft messages in one place, touch  on the Messages screen, and then touch **Drafts**.

## *Read and Reply to a Message*

Depending on your notification settings, the phone plays a ringtone, vibrates, or displays the message briefly in the status bar when you receive a new text or multimedia message. To change the notification for new text and multimedia messages, see [Text and Multimedia Message Options](#). A new message icon (  ) also appears in the status bar.

1. To open and read the message, you can:
  - Open the Notifications panel, and then touch the new message.
  - Touch  > , and then touch the message.
2. While reading the message, you can:
  - **Reply with a text message.** Touch the "Add text" box, enter your reply message, and then touch .
  - **Reply with a multimedia message.** Touch the "Add text" box, enter your reply message, touch  to choose an attachment for your message, and then touch .
  - **Call or save a phone number contained in the message.** Touch the phone number, and then choose whether to dial the number or add it to your contacts.
  - **Open a link in the message.** Touch the link to open it in the Web browser.
  - **Send to or share an email address contained in the message.** Touch the email address to send an email. You'll be asked to choose which email app to use. To share the email address, touch and hold it, touch **Share**, and then choose how you want to share it.
  - **Forward a message.** Touch the message (do not touch a link or a phone number) to open the options menu, and then touch **Forward**.
  - **Check message details.** Touch the message (do not touch a link or a phone number) to open the options menu, and then touch **View message details**.

## *Reply to an Alternate Contact Phone Number*

When a contact has multiple phone numbers stored on your phone, you'll see the particular phone number used below the contact's name. You can select which phone number to reply to.



Keep in mind that your response will be sent to the phone number of the latest message you've received from this contact.

1. Touch  > .
2. On the Messages screen, touch a contact (or phone number) to display the exchange of messages with that contact.
3. Touch  and select which phone number you want to reply to.
4. Touch the "Add text" box, and then enter your reply message.
5. Touch .

### Save a Text Message as a Task

Save a text message in your Tasks list so you can remind yourself when to reply.

1. Touch  > .
2. On the Messages screen, touch a contact (or phone number) to display the exchange of messages with that contact.
3. Touch the message you want to save, and then touch **Save as task**.
4. Enter a task title and other details.
5. Touch **SAVE**.

### Forward a Message

1. Touch  > .
2. On the Messages screen, touch a contact (or phone number) to display the exchange of messages with that contact.
3. Touch the message, and then touch **Forward**.

## *Receive Text Messages From Contacts Using an iPhone*

If you have just migrated your contacts from an iPhone to your new HTC phone, your contacts may still be texting you through iMessage and not through SMS or MMS.

To receive text messages from your contacts who are using an iPhone, you must unregister the phone number you used on your old iPhone from your Apple support profile.

Or, if you still have your old iPhone, turn off the service in iMessage settings.

## *View and Save an Attachment from a Multimedia Message*

When you receive a multimedia message, you can view and save files that are attached to it.

- If there's a media attachment such as a photo or video in a received message, touch it to view the content.
- To save the attachment, touch and hold the multimedia message, and then choose to save the type of attachment from the options menu.
- If the attachment is a contact (vCard), touch it to view the contact information, and then touch **Save** to add to your contacts.
- If the attachment is an appointment or event (vCalendar), touch it to choose the calendar where to save it, and then touch **Import**.

**Note:** If you are concerned about the size of your data downloads, you can choose to check the size and subject first before you download a multimedia message. On the Messages screen, touch  > **Settings > Multimedia messages (MMS)**. Clear the **Auto-retrieve** option.

## Help Protect Your Messages

You can move private text messages to the Secure box. You will need to enter a password to read messages in the Secure box.

**Important:** The Secure box does not encrypt messages.

**Important:** Message stored on your SIM card cannot be moved to the secure box.

### Move Messages to the Secure Box

1. Touch  > .
2. On the Messages screen, touch a contact (or phone number) to display the exchange of messages with that contact.
3. Touch  > **Move to secure box**.
4. Select the messages, and then touch **MOVE**.

**Note:** To move all the messages from a contact, on the Messages screen, touch and hold the contact and touch **Move to secure box**.

- To read messages in the Secure box, on the Messages screen, touch  > **Secure**. If it is your first time to use the Secure box, set a password.
- To remove messages or contacts from the Secure box, touch and hold the contact (or phone number) and touch **Move to general box**.

### Protect a Message from Deletion

You can lock a message so that it will not be deleted even if you delete the other messages in the conversation.

1. Touch  > .
2. On the Messages screen, touch a contact (or phone number) to display the exchange of messages with that contact.
3. Touch the message (not a link or a phone number) that you want to lock, and then touch **Lock message**. A lock icon  is displayed at the lower right of the message.

## *Block Unwanted Messages*

Declutter your Messages screen by moving spam messages from contacts to the block box. If you have blocked a contact, that contact's messages will also be in the block box.

1. Touch  > .
2. Do any of the following:
  - On the Messages screen, touch and hold a contact (or phone number) and touch **Block contact**.
  - To block multiple contacts, touch  > **Block contacts**, select the contacts, and touch **Move**.

When the contact sends you messages, you will not see them in the Messages screen or receive notifications and calls.

To read messages in the block box, on the Messages screen, touch  > **Block**.

**Note:** To remove messages or contacts from the block box, touch and hold the contact (or phone number) and touch **Unblock**.

**Note:** To completely discard future messages from blocked contacts, clear the **Save block message** option in the Messages settings.

## *Delete Messages and Conversations*

Tidy up your messages list by deleting old messages and conversations.

1. Touch  > .
2. On the Messages screen, do any of the following:
  - **Delete a message.** Open the conversation thread with a contact, touch the message, and then touch **Delete message**. To delete multiple messages within a conversation, touch  > **Delete messages** > **Delete by selection**, and then select the messages to delete.

- **Delete a conversation.** Touch and hold a contact (or phone number), and then touch **Delete**. To delete multiple conversations, on the Messages screen, touch  > **Delete threads**, and then select the conversations to delete.

**Tip:** In the Messages settings, touch **General > Delete old messages** to auto delete old messages.

## Back Up and Restore Your Text Messages

Back up important text messages to your phone's storage or to your email account.

### Back Up Text Messages

1. Touch  > .
2. On the Messages screen, touch  > **Back up/Restore SMS > Back up**.
3. Touch **OK > Back up SMS**.
4. Choose whether you want to protect the backup file with a password.
5. Enter a name for your backup file, and then touch **OK**.

### Back Up Text Messages Using Mail

**Important:** You need to set up your email account in Mail.

1. Touch  > .
2. On the Messages screen, touch  > **Back up/Restore SMS > Back up**.
3. Touch **OK > Back up SMS via mail**.
4. Choose whether you want to protect the backup file with a password.
5. Select the email app to use. The email app compose screen opens with the backup file attached.
6. Enter your email address.
7. Compose your email message, and touch .

**Note:** To restore your text messages on your phone, open the email message with the backup file attachment from the Mail application. Touch the attachment to open the Restore SMS screen and then touch the backup file to restore your text messages.

### Restore Text Messages

You can only restore text messages that were exported using the Back up SMS feature.

1. Touch  > .
2. On the Messages screen, touch  > **Back up/Restore SMS** > **Restore**.
3. Select a restore setting, and touch **NEXT**.
4. Touch the backup file to import.
5. Enter the password, and touch **OK**.

## *Text and Multimedia Message Options*

You can set how your phone notifies you when you receive a new text or multimedia message, or set other messaging options.

1. Touch  > .
2. On the Messages screen, touch  > **Settings**. You can set the following options:
  - **Notifications: Received messages**
    - **Received notification:** Select this option if you want to receive a notification in the status bar when a new text or multimedia message arrives.
    - **Play notification sound:** If you want the phone to ring when a new message arrives, select this option.
    - **Notification sound:** Select a ringtone that is specific to new text and multimedia messages. Note that the ringtone briefly plays when selected.
    - **Vibrate:** Select this option if you want the phone to vibrate when a new text or multimedia message arrives.
    - **Notification preview:** Select to display the sender and message preview on the lock screen and status bar.
  - **Notifications: Sent messages**
    - **Sent notification:** Select this option if you want to receive a notification in the status bar when a message is sent successfully.
    - **Failure notification:** Select this option if you want to receive a notification in the status bar when a message is not sent successfully.
    - **Play notification sound:** If you want the phone to ring when a sent or failure notification is received, select this option.
    - **Notification sound:** Select a ringtone that is specific to sent or failure notifications. Note that the ringtone briefly plays when selected.

- **Vibrate:** Select this option if you want the phone to vibrate when a new text or multimedia message is sent.
- **Display message on screen:** Set your phone to show pop-up notifications (not just in the status bar) when your messages are sent successfully or not. You can also select **None** to disable this option.
- **Text messages (SMS) Settings**
  - **Priority setting:** Set the priority for outgoing text messages.
  - **SMS characters:** Select this option to correctly display special accented characters in SMS messages.
- **Multimedia messages (MMS) Settings: MMS settings**
  - **Auto-retrieve:** Select this option to automatically retrieve all your multimedia messages completely. When selected, the multimedia message header plus the message body and attachments will automatically download to your phone. If you clear this check box, only the multimedia message header will be retrieved and shown in your Messages screen.
  - **Roaming auto-retrieve:** Select this option to automatically retrieve all your multimedia messages completely while roaming. Data roaming charges will apply.
  - **Priority setting:** Set the priority for outgoing MMS messages.
  - **Maximum message size:** Set the maximum file size of a multimedia message. The multimedia message will not be sent out if it exceeds the file size set here.
  - **Attachment storage:** Select the storage where you want to save multimedia message attachments. This is disabled for phones with no storage card.
  - **Connection settings:** View various connection settings such as the connection name and server address.
- **Multimedia messages (MMS) Settings: Group Messages**
  - **Group Messaging:** Select to turn group MMS on or off. When you enable this, you will need to enter your phone number for group MMS.
- **General: Recipient list settings**
  - **Show sent message history:** Include the sent message history when searching for a message recipient.
  - **Show call history:** Include the Call history when searching for a message recipient.

- **Show email address:** Include email addresses when searching for a message recipient.
- **General: Message preview**
  - **Message preview:** Set the number of lines of text to appear in the conversation on the Messages screen.
- **General: Storage settings**
  - **Delete old messages:** Automatically delete older messages, except for locked messages, when the set limits are reached.
  - **Text message limit:** Choose the maximum number of text messages to store in each conversation thread. (This does not include locked messages.)
  - **Multimedia message limit:** Choose the maximum number of MMS messages to store in each conversation thread. (This does not include locked messages.)
- **General: Settings**
  - **Password:** Set a password for the Secure box.
  - **Save block message:** Select to save blocked messages to the block box.
- **General: Signature**
  - **Use signature:** Select this option to add a signature to all your outgoing text and multimedia messages.
  - **Signature:** Touch to compose your own signature.
- **General: Personalize**
  - Lets you customize the message thread's background image and color and texture of message bubbles.
- **General: Font size**
  - Set the font size for message threads.
- **General: Callback number**
  - Enable or change the callback number for SMS messages.
- **Emergency alerts**
  - Select the type of emergency alerts that you want to receive on your phone.

# Social Networking Accounts

Stay in touch on the go with all your social networking accounts. Post updates on Facebook, and Twitter, chat on Google+ Hangouts, see what everyone's talking about from YouTube, and more.

## Facebook

Sign in to your Facebook account from the Accounts & sync settings or the Facebook app. See your Facebook friends' statuses in People or in HTC BlinkFeed. You can also see your Facebook friends' photos in Gallery. For more information, see [HTC BlinkFeed - Your Dynamic Home Screen](#).

## Twitter

Sign in to your Twitter account from the Accounts & sync settings, and you can see your Twitter contacts' latest tweets in People or in HTC BlinkFeed. See [HTC BlinkFeed - Your Dynamic Home Screen](#).

## Google+

With Google+ you can check your friends' updates, post updates of your own, and chat with friends in your Google+ circles.

- To open Google+, touch  >  > **Google+**.
- To learn what you can do and get help in Google+, touch  > **Help**.

## YouTube

Check out the latest video sensations using the YouTube app.

### Watch YouTube Videos

1. Touch  >  > **YouTube**.
2. Browse or search for a video.
3. Touch the one you want to watch.
4. While watching a video, you can:
  - Turn the phone sideways to watch the video in full screen.
  - Touch the video screen to pause, resume playback, or drag the slider to jump to a different part of the video.
  - Scroll down the video information panel to see the description, related videos, or comments from other viewers.



- Browse other videos by minimizing the video screen. Touch  or drag the video screen down to minimize. To close the video thumbnail, swipe it left or right.

**Tip:** If you want to watch the video at a later time, touch  next to the video title, and then touch **Add to > Watch later**. You can access the video again from your account profile's Watch later list.

5. Touch the YouTube icon to return to the main screen.

## Preload Videos

Set the YouTube app to preload videos so that you can watch them without interruptions. Videos are preloaded when your phone is being charged and is connected to a Wi-Fi network.

For more information about preloading videos, refer to the YouTube help.

1. In the YouTube app, touch  > **Settings > Preloading**.
2. Select what type of videos to preload.
3. The videos are preloading when  appears on Watch list screen or on the channel you subscribed to. The icon changes to  when the videos are ready to watch.

## Search for Videos

1. In the YouTube app, touch .
2. In the search box, enter the words you want to search for. As you type, matching items are shown as a list.

**Tip:** Touch  to enter it in the search box. New suggestions appear and you can enter more text or touch  beside a subsequent suggestion to quickly refine your search.

3. If what you're searching for is in the list of suggestions, touch the item.
4. To show results which were just recently posted. Touch **All time**, and then select a time period you want.
5. Scroll through the results and touch a video to watch it.

## Share a Video Link

1. In the YouTube app, touch a video or search for a video and then touch it.
2. Touch the video screen, and then touch .
3. Choose how you want to share the video link from the available options.

## Create Video Playlists

Organize your favorite videos into playlists and watch them in the YouTube app.

**Note:** Make sure that you're signed in to your Google Account.

1. Touch  >  > **YouTube**.
2. Browse or search for a video.
3. Touch  next to the video title, and then touch **Add to > New playlist**.
4. Enter the playlist name, and then touch **OK**.

**Tip:** If you don't want to share the video playlist, select **Private** before you touch **OK**.

5. To add another video to your playlist, browse or search for the video, and then touch  next to the video title.
6. Touch **Add to**, and then touch the playlist name.
7. To access and watch your video playlists, touch the YouTube icon, and then touch **Playlist**.

# Apps and Entertainment

---

You can access all your phone's apps in the Apps screen.

**Note:** Available applications and services are subject to change at any time.

## Get Apps

You can find and install apps from Google Play or from the Web.

**Important:** Sprint's policies often do not apply to third-party applications. Third-party applications may access your personal information or require Sprint to disclose your customer information to the third-party application provider. To find out how a third-party application will collect, access, use, or disclose your personal information, check the application provider's policies, which can usually be found on their website. If you aren't comfortable with the third-party application's policies, don't use the application.

## Get Apps from Google Play

Google Play is the place to go to find new apps for your phone. Choose from a wide variety of free and paid apps ranging from productivity apps and games to books, magazines, movies, and music. When you find an app you want, you can easily download and install it on your phone.

**Note:** A payment service is required to purchase a paid app. You will be asked to confirm method of payment when you purchase an app.

## Create a Google Wallet Account

You must have a Google Wallet account associated with your Google Account to purchase items from the Google Play Store app.

- Do one of the following:
  - On your computer, go to [google.com/wallet](https://google.com/wallet) to create a Google Wallet account.
  - The first time you use your phone to buy an item from Google Play, you're prompted to enter your billing information to set up a Google Wallet account.

**Warning:** When you've used Google Wallet once to purchase an application from the Google Play Store app, the phone remembers your password, so you don't need to enter it the next time. For this reason, you should secure your phone to prevent others from using it without your permission. (For more information, see [Screen Lock Settings](#).)

## Find and Install an Application

When you install apps from Google Play and use them on your phone, they may require access to your personal information (such as your location, contact data, and more) or access to certain functions or settings of your phone. Download and install only apps that you trust.

**Important:** Be cautious when downloading apps that have access to functions or a significant amount of your data on your phone. You're responsible for the results of using downloaded apps.

1. Touch  >  > **Play Store**.
2. Browse or search for an app.
3. When you find the app that you like, touch it and read its description and user reviews.
4. To download or purchase the app, touch **INSTALL** (for free apps) or the price button (for paid apps).
5. Touch **ACCEPT**.

**Tip:** Apps sometimes get updated with improvements or bug fixes. To automatically download updates, after installing, touch  > **Auto-update**. Or if you downloaded an app when connected to a Wi-Fi network, touch **OK** when asked to auto-update apps when on Wi-Fi.

To open the installed app, touch **OPEN** or find the app in the Apps screen.

## Restore Apps from Google Play

Upgraded to a new phone, replaced a lost one, or performed a factory reset? Restore apps that were downloaded previously.

1. Touch  >  > **Play Store**.
2. Touch  to open the slideout menu.
3. Touch **My apps**, swipe to the **ALL** tab, and then touch the app you want to restore.
4. Install the app.

For more details, refer to the Google Play help. Touch  > **Help**.

## *Sprint Zone*

Enhance your Sprint experience. The free Sprint Zone application makes it a snap to find and install recommended apps, and more.

1. Touch  >  > **Sprint Zone > Apps**.

2. Scroll through the app categories at the top of the screen and then touch an app to download and install it from Google Play.

## Download Apps from the Web

You can download apps directly from websites.

**Important:** Apps downloaded from websites can be from unknown sources. To help protect your phone and your personal data, we strongly recommend that you download from Google Play.

1. Open your Web browser, and then go to the website where you can download the app you want.
2. Follow the website's download instructions for the app.
3. Before you can install the downloaded app, make sure that you've set your phone to allow installation of third-party apps in **Settings > Security > Unknown sources**.

**Important:** After installing the app, go back to **Settings > Security** and make sure to clear the **Unknown sources** option.

## Uninstall an App

If you no longer need an app that you've downloaded and installed, you can uninstall it.

**Note:** Most of the preloaded apps cannot be uninstalled.

1. Touch  > .
2. Touch and hold the app you want to remove, and then drag it to .

**Note:** If you purchased an app in Play Store, you can uninstall it for a refund within a limited time. To know more about the refund policy for paid apps, refer to the Google Play help.

## Navigation

Your phone offers a number of location-based navigation programs to help you figure out where you are and get you where you're going.

### HTC Car

Now when you drive, you can easily use your phone to reach your destination, keep you entertained, and help you stay in touch with the people that matter to you. Get easy access to music, maps, navigation, and phone calls with HTC Car.

**Important: Using Your Phone While Driving** - Talking on or otherwise using your phone while driving (or operating the phone without a hands-free device) is prohibited in some jurisdictions. Laws vary as to specific restrictions. Remember that safety always comes first.

## Launch HTC Car

1. HTC Car instantly launches when you mount the phone in the HTC Car Kit (available separately). You can also touch  >  > **Car**.
2. Swipe up or down to see what you can do in HTC Car.

**Tip:** When using HTC Car, return to the main screen from any other screen by touching .

When you remove your phone from HTC Car Kit, HTC Car will automatically exit. You can also manually close HTC Car by touching  from the main screen.

## Use Voice Commands in HTC Car

Use your voice to control HTC Car.

1. In HTC Car, touch the screen with three fingers to activate voice command mode.
2. Do one of the following:
  - **Call someone.** Say "Call [person's name in phonebook]"
  - **Play music.** Say "Play [song title, album, artist name, or genre]"
  - **Play the radio.** Say "Listen to [song title, artist name, or genre]"
  - **Find something on the map.** Say "Find [name of place, address, type of place]"

## Find Places Using HTC Car

HTC Car helps you to find your way to where you want to go. Easily find nearby restaurants and more. HTC Car gives you the information you need so you won't get lost.

1. In HTC Car, touch **Navigation**.
2. To search for a place, touch  and enter a location in the search box.
3. To look up a place that you've previously searched for, touch **Previous**.
4. To get directions for an upcoming event in Calendar, touch **Appointments** and touch an upcoming appointment.

## Explore What's Around You

With just a few taps, you can find interesting places around you quickly.

1. In HTC Car, touch **Navigation**.
2. Touch a category, for example **Restaurant** or **Parking** to see what's available near you.
3. Touch  to enter your own search keywords.

## Play Music in HTC Car

1. In HTC Car, touch **Music**.
2. Swipe left or right to browse by category.
3. Touch **Q** to search your collection.
4. Touch an album, song, or playlist to listen to it.

**Tip:** You can also play music by touching **Speak** on the main screen and saying what you want to hear. For example, say "Play Beethoven's 5th".

## Make Phone Calls in HTC Car

- Touch **Dialer** to open the dialpad.
- Touch **People** and then browse a category or search by entering a name.
- Touch **Speak** and say "Call" and the person's name. For example, say "Call Jennifer Singer."

## Handle Incoming Calls in HTC Car

- If you hear a voice prompt, say "yes" or "no" to answer or decline a call.
- Touch **Answer** or **Decline**.

## Customize HTC Car

- To change the default behavior of HTC Car, touch **Settings**.
- To add more apps to HTC Car, touch **+** and select an app.

## Google Maps

Google Maps lets you track your current location, view real-time traffic situations, and receive detailed directions to your destination. It also provides a search tool where you can locate places of interest or an address on a map, or view locations at street level.

**Note:** To find your location with Google Maps, you need to enable location sources. For more information on location services, see [Location Setting](#).

**Note:** The Google Maps application does not cover every country or city.

## Get Around Maps

When you open Google Maps, you can easily find your location on the map or check out nearby places by panning and zooming in and out on the map.

1. Touch  >  > **Maps**.
2. Touch  to show your current location. The blue marker  or  shows your location on the map.
3. Touch  to turn Compass mode on. In Compass mode, the map orients itself depending on the direction you're facing. To exit Compass mode, touch .
4. If you want to see more information overlaid on the map, touch , and then touch a map view such as **Traffic** or **Public transit** to toggle the view on and off.

## Navigate the Map

Navigate the map using finger gestures.

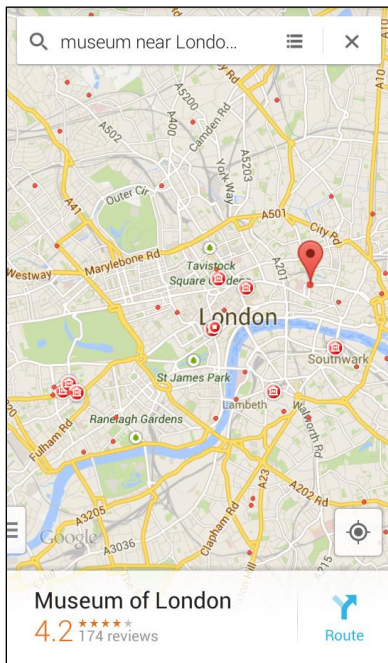
- Slide your finger on any direction to pan.
- Double-tap the map or slide two fingers apart over an area to zoom in. To zoom in while holding the phone with one hand, double-tap with your thumb and hold the second tap, and then drag your thumb down.
- Double-tap the map with two fingers or slide two fingers together over an area to zoom out. To zoom out while holding the phone with one hand, double-tap with your thumb and hold the second tap, and then drag your thumb up.
- Touch and hold an area with two fingers and then drag your fingers in a circular motion to rotate the map.
- Touch and hold an area with two fingers and then swipe up to see an angled view of the map. Swipe down to return to overhead view.

## Search for a Location

In Google Maps, you can search for a location, such as an address or a type of business or establishment (for example, museums).

1. Touch  >  > **Maps**.
2. Touch the search box and then enter the place you want to search for.
3. Touch the Enter key on the keyboard or touch a suggested search item. The first location on the search appears with a place marker  and its info sheet displays at the bottom of the screen. All other search results are indicated by a red dot or a smart map icon.





4. If there is more than one search result, touch to view the search results list.
5. Touch the info sheet to check the address, get directions, see the location in Street View (if available), and more.
6. To check the next or previous location on the search, swipe the info sheet left or right.

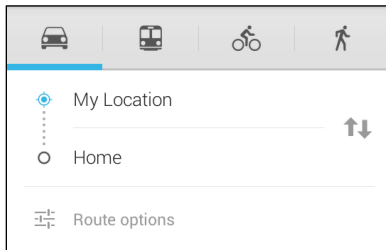
To clear the map and search another location, swipe down the info sheet (if it's expanded), and then touch .

## Get Directions

Get detailed directions to your destination. Google Maps provides travel directions by car, public transit, bike, or foot.

1. Touch > > **Maps**.
2. Touch .
3. Choose how you want to get to your destination.
4. Use your current location as starting point, or touch **My location** to enter your starting point or select a location from your search history.

5. Touch **Choose destination**, and then enter or select your destination.



**Note:** If you're taking public transit, touch  to set the date and time of travel, or touch **Options** to set your route preferences.

6. Touch a route or transit option to view the directions on the map. You'll also see the travel duration on the info sheet at the bottom of the screen.
7. Touch the info sheet to view the directions in a list.

When you're finished viewing or following the directions, touch  to reset the map. Your destination is automatically saved in the Google Maps history.

## Get Help with Google Maps

Get help and more information about Maps.

- In Google Maps, touch  > **Help**. The Web browser opens and takes you to the Google Maps help site.

## Scout

Scout™ by Telenav is a daily personal navigator that helps you get where you're going. It lets you see and hear turn-by-turn directions and it can provide important, personalized information about traffic and alternate routes.

**Note:** To find your location, you need to enable location sources. To learn how, see [Location Setting](#).

## Install the Scout App on Your Phone

Before you use Scout on your phone, you must download and install the app from the Google Play Store app.

1. Touch  >  > **Play Store**.
2. Touch  and search for "scout".
3. Touch **Scout GPS Navigation & Traffic** from the results list.
4. Touch **INSTALL**, and then touch **ACCEPT**.

5. When the download has completed, touch **OPEN**. To open the app from the Home screen, touch  > **Scout**.

## Music

Your phone lets you discover, download, and listen to your favorite music through a variety of music apps. Choose the Music or Play Music app to enjoy music on your phone.

### Listen to Music

Enjoy your favorite songs on your phone using the Music application.

**Note:** When you open the Music app for the first time, you'll be asked if you would like to automatically download related content, such as album covers and artist photos, to your phone.

1. Touch  >  > **Music**.
2. Swipe to the different tabs to browse by category.
3. Touch a song to play.
4. Touch the onscreen icons to control music playback, repeat songs and more.



- Touch and drag your finger across the progress bar  to jump to any part of the song.
- Touch  to turn shuffle on or off. (Shuffle is off when button is gray.)
- Touch  to cycle through the repeat modes: repeat all songs, repeat current song, and don't repeat.

- Touch  to play your music on a DLNA® compliant TV or audio system, HTC Media Link HD, or stereo Bluetooth device.
- Touch  to minimize the Now playing screen to continue browsing your music collection.
- Press the **Volume up** or **Volume down** button to adjust the playback volume.

**Note:** When you're listening to music and the screen display turns off, press the **Power** button to turn the screen back on and control the music playback directly on the Lock screen.

**Tip:** You can also control music playback right from the Notifications panel.

## Make Your Music Sound Better

With premium sound technology and headphones by harman/kardon, your phone delivers a premium listening experience.

### Enable Clari-Fi™

Harman/kardon's Clari-Fi technology analyzes music files on your phone and recreates audio information that gets lost when music are digitized and compressed. Enable Clari-Fi when you want low quality digital music to sound better on your phone. When Clari-Fi is enabled, you'll see this icon  on the status bar.

To turn Clari-Fi on or off:

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch .
2. Touch **harman/kardon audio**.
3. Touch the **Clari-Fi** ON/OFF switch.

### Use the Harman/kardon Headphones and LiveStage™

For a lifelike listening experience, plug in the bundled harman/kardon headphones to your phone and enable LiveStage. LiveStage makes your music sound clearer and richer.

To select a headphone profile and enable LiveStage:

1. Connect the headphones to your phone.
2. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch .
3. Touch **harman/kardon audio**.
4. Touch **LiveStage** and select your headphone from the list.

When LiveStage is enabled, you'll see this icon  on the Status bar.

To turn LiveStage off:

- Do any of the following.
  - Unplug the headphones.
  - Touch the **LiveStage** ON/OFF switch in **Settings** ⚙️ > **harman/kardon audio**.

## Control Music Playback with the Harman/kardon Headphones

Press the buttons on the harman/kardon headphones to control music playback or perform other tasks on your phone.



- While playing a track in the Music app, you can:
  - Press **+** to go to the next music track. Press and hold **+** to forward on the music track (Music app only).
  - Press **-** to go to the previous music track. Press and hold **-** to rewind on the music track (Music app only).
  - Press **●** to play or pause playback.
  - Press and hold **●** to open Google Voice Search™.

## Create and Work with Playlists

Personalize your music experience by creating music playlists. Make a playlist containing just your favorite songs or create one to match your mood for the day.

### Create Playlists

You can make as many playlists as you like on your phone.

1. Touch **Home** > **App Drawer** > **Music**.
2. Swipe to the **PLAYLISTS** tab.
3. Touch **+** and then enter a playlist name.

4. To add songs, touch  beside the title text box, browse your music collection, and then touch a song to add. Repeat this step to add more songs.
5. You can also:
  - **Rearrange songs.** Touch and hold  next to the song title you want to move and then drag it to its new position.
  - **Delete songs.** Select the songs you want to remove from the playlist.
  - **Change playlist name.** Enter a new name for the playlist in the title text box.
6. Touch **SAVE**.

To edit a playlist you've created, swipe to the **PLAYLISTS** tab on the Music app's main screen. Touch a playlist, and then touch  > **Edit playlist**.

### Play the Songs in a Playlist

1. Touch  >  > **Music**.
2. Swipe to the **PLAYLISTS** tab.
3. Touch a playlist, and then touch the song you want to play first.

The song starts playing on the **NOW PLAYING** tab.

### Delete Your Playlists

Follow these steps to delete playlists that you no longer use.

**Note:** The Recently played and the Recently added playlists can't be deleted.

1. Touch  >  > **Music**.
2. Swipe to the **PLAYLISTS** tab.
3. Touch and hold the playlist you want to delete, and then touch **Delete playlist**.
4. To remove several playlists, touch  > **Delete playlists**.

### Add a Song to the Queue

While playing a song, you can also browse other tracks stored on your phone. Add a song or an album to the queue so it plays when the current playlist has finished playing.

1. While a song is playing, browse for other tracks.
2. Do any of the following:

- Browse for the album or playlist that you want, touch and hold it, and then touch **Add to queue**.
- Browse for an artist or song, and then touch **■ ■ ■ > Add to queue**.

The songs you've added appear on the **QUEUE** tab.

## *Update Album Covers and Artist Photos*

**Note:** To save on data usage, you might want to connect to a Wi-Fi network when updating your album covers and artist photos. In Music settings, select **Wi-Fi only**.

1. Touch  >  > **Music**.
2. Swipe to the **ARTISTS** or **ALBUMS** tab.
3. Touch  > **Update artist photos** or **Update album art**.

If you want your phone to automatically check and update your music collection, touch  on the Music app's main screen, and then touch **Settings**. Select **Album art** and **Artist photos**.

## *Set a Song as a Ringtone*

Pick a song from your Music library and set it as your ringtone or as ringtone for a favorite contact.

### **Set a Song as a Ringtone**

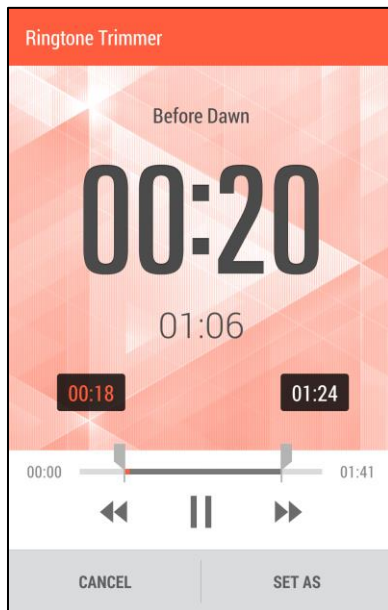
Pick a song from your Music library and set it as your ringtone or as ringtone for a favorite contact.

1. Touch  >  > **Music**.
2. Play the song that you want to set as a ringtone.
3. Touch  > **Set as ringtone**.
4. Touch **Phone ringtone** or **Contact ringtone**. If you select **Contact ringtone**, choose the contacts you want to associate the ringtone with.

### **Trim an MP3 Ringtone**

Use the Music app's ringtone trimmer if you want to set only a part of the song as ringtone.

1. When you find the song that you want, touch  > **Set as ringtone** > **Trim the ringtone**.



2. Drag the trim sliders  to the part where you want the ringtone to begin and end. For a more precise trimming, touch the left or right arrow buttons. Time markers indicate where you are on the song.
3. When you're done trimming, touch **SET AS**.
4. Choose whether to set your trimmed song as your **Phone ringtone** or **Contact ringtone**.

**Note:** You can see your new ringtone in the phone settings. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Sound** > **Ringtone**.

## *Search for Lyrics, Music Videos, and More*

Take your music entertainment to a whole new level with lyrics, music videos, artists' information, and visualizations.

### **View Song Lyrics**

Sing along with your favorite music tracks. Your phone gives your music an extra kick with song lyrics and cool music visualizations.

**Note:** To save on data usage, you might want to connect to a Wi-Fi network when updating your album covers and artist photos. In Music settings, select **Wi-Fi only**.

1. Touch  >  > **Music**.
2. Browse to the song you want to play and touch it.



3. Swipe to the **VISUALIZER** tab to view the lyrics. Song lyrics appear onscreen if content has been successfully downloaded.

**Tip:** Want a different visual for your music? Touch  > **Scene** and select a scene. If you want the scene to change for every song, select **Random**.

4. Touch the screen to display the lyrics in full screen.
5. To jump to another part of the song, touch the screen to make the progress bar appear. Touch and drag your finger across the progress bar, or touch and hold  or .

## Look Up Related Music Info

SoundHound can find info about the song you're listening to. You can look up the lyrics, learn about the artist's tour dates, and more.

**Note:** To save on data usage, you might want to connect to a Wi-Fi network when updating your album covers and artist photos. In Music settings, select **Wi-Fi only**.

- While a song is playing, touch  > **GET INFO**.

## Find Music Videos on YouTube

It's easy to find music videos of the song you're listening to on YouTube.

- On the **NOW PLAYING** tab, touch  > **Search** > **YouTube**.

## Google Play Music

Listen to your music collection anywhere you are with the Google Play Music app. All your music is stored online, so no need to worry about syncing or storage space.

- To open Google Play Music, touch  >  > **Play Music**.

Learn more about Google Play Music at [play.google.com](http://play.google.com).

## Sprint Music Plus

Use Sprint Music Plus to find and play music tracks, ringtones, and ringback tones. Sprint Music Plus features a music player, manager, and store in one app.

### Install the Sprint Music Plus App

Before you use Sprint Music Plus on your phone, you must download and install the app from Google Play.

1. Touch  >  > **Play Store**.
2. Touch  and search for "sprint music plus".

3. Touch **Sprint Music Plus** from the results list.
4. Touch **INSTALL**, and then touch **ACCEPT**.
5. When the download has completed, touch **OPEN**.

**Note:** To open the app from the Home screen, touch  > **Sprint Music Plus**.

## TV

The TV app makes your phone a key part of your entertainment experience. The TV app lets you easily tune into your preferred shows, get reminded when your favorite show is on, see what shows are coming up, and more.

Discover current and upcoming programs with the intelligent electronic program guide (EPG) that learns your viewing habits and suggests shows you might like. The TV app can also remember more than one EPG, so if you have more than one cable TV provider, you can get reminders for any of them.

**Note:** EPG information is only available for some countries.

### *Set Up the TV App*

The first time you open the TV app, you need to set it up.

**Note:** Make sure that you have an Internet connection before you set up the EPG.

1. Touch  >  > **TV**.
2. Touch **NEXT**.
3. Select your location, and then touch **NEXT**. Depending on your location, you may be asked to enter your postal code or select your region.
4. Choose your cable provider, and then touch **NEXT**.

**Note:** Your cable TV or service provider may not be supported by the TV app.

5. Select the channels included in your cable package, and then touch **NEXT**.
6. Select your video on demand services, and then touch **NEXT**.

**Note:** The available video on demand services depend on your location.

7. Touch  next to your favorite shows. If you don't find your favorite shows in the list, touch , enter the show's name, and then touch .
8. Touch **FINISH**.

## Use the EPG

Use the TV app's EPG (electronic program guide) to check what's showing on your TV, view show details, or schedule TV reminders.

**Note:** You need to set up a remote before using the TV app. See [Set Up Your Remote Control](#).

1. Touch  >  > TV.
2. Do one of the following :
  - Touch a thumbnail to check the show's title, cast, and synopsis.
  - Touch and hold a thumbnail to see the options menu.
  - Touch  to open the slideout menu, and then choose the type of shows you want to display on the EPG or to view the channel guide.

To make changes to your EPG settings, add remotes, and more, touch  to open the slideout menu, and then touch **Settings**.

## Add Another EPG

If you have more than one cable TV provider, you can add additional EPGs to the TV app and easily switch between them on your phone. The TV app is designed on the concept of Rooms. For each Room you can add one EPG and one remote.

**Note:** You can only set up another EPG for a TV service provider from the same location or country. When you change the location or country, previously created EPGs and remotes will be deleted.

**Note:** There is a limit to the number of Rooms you can add. When you reach the maximum number, you'll need to remove one before you can add another.

1. Touch  >  > TV.
2. On the TV app main screen, touch  to open the slideout menu.
3. Touch **Settings > Rooms**.
4. Touch  and enter a name for the new Room.
5. With **Create a new room** selected, touch **NEXT**.

**Tip:** If you want to duplicate an existing EPG, select the Room with the EPG you want to copy.

6. Follow the onscreen instructions to setup the EPG.

To switch between EPGs, swipe left to right to open the slideout menu, and then touch  next to the Room you're currently in.

## Edit, Rename, or Remove a Room

1. Touch  >  > **TV**.
2. On the TV app main screen, touch  to open the slideout menu.
3. Touch **Settings** > **Rooms**.
4. Touch a Room to hide or show channels, tag your favorite channels, and more.

If you want to rename or remove the Room, touch  while viewing the Room editor, and touch the option you want.

## Schedule TV Programs

Whether your favorite show is airing in the next hour or next weekend, you'll never miss it when you set a reminder in the TV app. The Calendar app will notify you when your favorite show is about to start.

1. Touch  >  > **TV**.
2. Touch a thumbnail of a program that interests you.
3. Touch **TV schedule** to see other viewing times. For programs that are part of a series, choose an episode from the list.
4. Select a viewing time, and then touch  > **Remind me** to add a reminder for that show.

Before the show starts, you'll receive an upcoming event notification. Touch the notification and then touch the link and open it in the TV app to view the show details.

If you want to check what shows you scheduled, touch  to open the slideout menu, and then touch **My Picks**. Then swipe to the **SCHEDULED** tab.

## Get Social on the TV App

Don't miss out and join the latest conversations around your favorite shows.

1. Touch  >  > **TV**.
2. Touch a thumbnail of a program that interests you.
3. Swipe to the **OFFICIAL FEED** tab (when available) to view social media updates from the program's official social accounts.
4. On the **FAN TALK** tab, view social media updates posted by fans about the program. If there's no feed yet, touch **Add trending hashtags** to track the topics that you want.
5. To post your update, while on the **FAN TALK** tab, touch .

## Watch On Demand Videos

Add on-demand services to the TV app to enjoy available movies and TV shows anytime you want.

**Note:** Most on-demand movies and TV shows can be purchased or rented from your video service provider.

**Note:** You may need to download the on demand service app first from Google Play.

1. Touch  >  > **TV**.
2. On the TV app main screen, touch  to open the slideout menu.
3. Touch **Movies**, **TV Shows**, or **Sports**, and then swipe to the **STREAMING** tab.
4. Touch a thumbnail to view details about the program. For programs that are part of a series, choose an episode from the list.
5. Touch the video on demand service that you want to use to watch the show.

**Note:** To add or remove video on demand services, touch  to open the slideout menu, and then touch **Settings** > **Streaming**.

## Check Scores, Stats, and More with Live Sports

Be in the middle of the action while watching an ongoing game. View scores, stats, and social media buzz in real-time right on your phone.

**Note:** To view and post social media updates, you'll need to sign in with your accounts.

1. Touch  >  > **TV**.
2. On the TV app main screen, touch  to open the slideout menu.
3. Under HTC TV, touch **Live Sports**.
4. Touch a game that interests you.
5. On the **DETAILS** tab, view scores, player stats, and more.
6. On the **OFFICIAL FEED** tab (when available), view social media updates from the teams' official social accounts.
7. On the **FAN TALK** tab, view social media updates posted by fans about the program. If there's no feed yet, touch **Add trending hashtags** to track the topics that you want.
8. To post your update, while on the **FAN TALK** tab, touch . Compose your update and then select the tags.

## Set Up Your Remote Control

Stop shuffling your TV, set top box, and home theater system remote controls while watching TV. You can combine them into one remote.

**Note:** Make sure you have created a Room. By default, your first Room will be called "TV Room". See [Use the EPG](#).

**Note:** Make sure that your phone has an Internet connection.

1. Touch  >  > TV.
2. Touch  to select the Room you want to create a remote for.
3. Touch  > **START**.
4. Select the devices you want to control with your remote, and then touch **NEXT**.

**Note:** The TV option can't be excluded.

5. Select the brand of your TV, and then touch **NEXT**.
6. Make sure your TV is off, and then touch **NEXT**.
7. Point your phone towards the TV and touch the blinking button on the screen.
8. Touch **YES** if your phone was able to turn on your TV, and then follow the onscreen instructions to continue setting up the other devices.
  - If the TV didn't turn on, touch **NO**. Your phone will try another remote control profile.
  - If no matching remote control profile is found, you'll need to manually set up the remote control.

## Customize the Remote Control Buttons

You can change any of the remote control buttons.

**Important:** To avoid conflict with the EPG, it is recommended to not change any of the buttons on the **NUMBER PAD** tab.

1. Touch  >  > TV.
2. Touch  >  > **Button setup**.
3. Touch a button to configure.

**Note:** Swipe to the **MORE** tab to add and configure more buttons.

4. Align the IR port on your phone with the IR port on your device's remote control. Your phone and your device's remote control should be less than 2 in (5 cm) apart.

5. On your device's remote control, touch and hold the button you want to add to your phone.
6. Touch the blinking onscreen button to test the button.
7. Touch **Yes** to finish setting up the button.

**Note:** If you touch **No**, you'll be prompted to try again.

8. Touch  until you exit the Button setup mode.

## Control Your TV with HTC Remote

Start using your phone as your TV remote control.

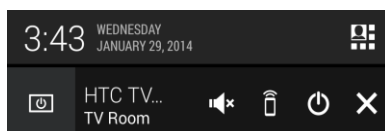
1. Touch  >  > TV.
2. Touch .
3. Do any of the following:
  - **Turn the TV, set top box, or home theater system on or off.** On the **POWER & INPUT** tab, touch the **On**, **Off**, **ON/OFF** button under the device name.
  - **Change the input source for the TV or home theater system.** On the **POWER & INPUT** tab, touch the **Input** button under the device name.
  - **Change channels, adjust or mute the volume, and more.** Go to the **CH/VOL** tab.
  - **Enter channel numbers directly.** Go to the **NUMBER PAD** tab.
  - **Switch between recently watched channels.** On the **NUMBER PAD** tab, touch . You can also switch to a recently watched channel in the Notifications panel.
  - **Access the playback controls.** Go to the **CH/VOL** tab.

**Tip:** To automatically turn on the display when you pick up your phone while using the TV app, select the **Auto Wake** option in  > **Settings**.

## Control Your TV From the Notifications Panel

You can easily use your phone to mute the TV and more.

1. Slide open the Notifications panel.
2. Touch the controls to mute the TV, switch channels, and more.



## Google Play Movies & TV

Stream movies you've purchased on Google Play using the Google Play Movies & TV app. You can stream instantly or download the movie or TV show on your phone so you can watch it whenever you're free. Google Play Movies & TV app also gives quick access to your personal videos, including those you've captured on your phone.

- To open Google Play Movies & TV, touch  >  > **Play Movies & TV**.

Learn more about Google Play Movies & TV at [play.google.com](http://play.google.com).

## Connect to Your Home Entertainment System

By swiping up with three fingers on the Music or Gallery app screen, share media you're watching or playing to external devices and make your experience bigger and louder.

You can share through:

- HTC Media Link HD. See [About HTC Media Link HD](#).
- DLNA. See [Share Media on DLNA Devices](#).
- A2DP (Bluetooth), or other supported display connections.

**Note:** Some devices may need to be paired before you can share to them.

### About HTC Media Link HD

Plug in HTC Media Link HD to any TV with an HDMI port. You can then swipe up your phone's screen with three fingers to display content wirelessly to your TV.



**Note:** HTC Media Link HD is sold separately.

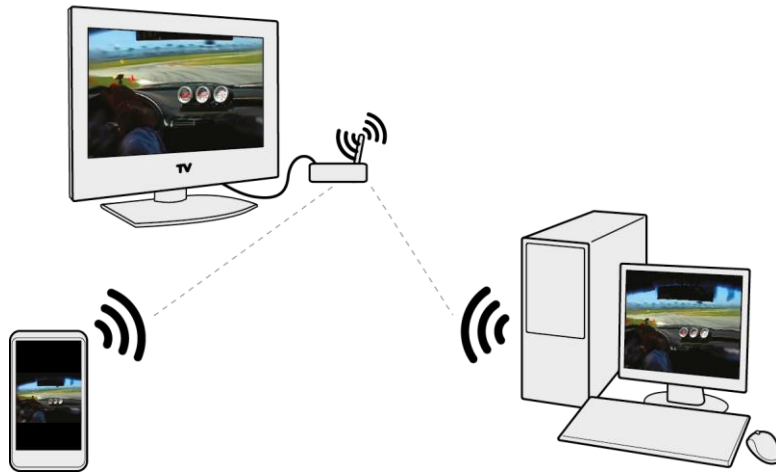
To find out more about setting up HTC Media Link HD and using it with your phone, refer to the HTC Media Link HD user guide.



## Share Media on DLNA Devices

Share photos, videos, and movies with your friends on a big screen. Simply connect your phone to your home network and instantly share photos, videos, movies, and music.

**Note:** If you'll be using a DLNA compliant TV or audio system, refer to its documentation on how to connect it to your home network.



1. Connect your phone to your home network via Wi-Fi.
2. Open the Gallery or Music app.
3. Locate the media that you want to share, and then touch it.
4. Swipe up with three fingers to show the Media output screen.
5. Select the device on your network where you want to play the media.
6. Once connected to the other device, touch the onscreen controls to control playback, adjust the volume, and more.

**Note:** For more information about DLNA, visit [dlna.org](http://dlna.org).

## HTC Connect

If you're looking for a new DLNA home entertainment system, find one that has the HTC Connect logo.



Connecting your HTC phone to an HTC Connect certified device is fast and easy. You'll also be able to remotely control media playback, adjust the volume, and more. For more information, see [htc-connect.com](http://htc-connect.com).

## Kid Mode

Switch to Kid Mode® and help prevent your kids from wandering off to inappropriate Web sites or messing with your important work files while using your phone. Use Kid Mode to let your children enjoy fun and age-appropriate games and more, while helping to protect your important data from accidental deletion.

To learn more about Kid Mode, visit [zoodles.com](http://zoodles.com).

### Create a Child Profile

1. Touch  >  > **Kid Mode**. The first time you use Kid Mode, you need to create or sign in to your account.
2. Touch the default name at the top of the screen, and then touch **Add Child**.
3. Fill out the information on the screen and then touch **Save**.

### Switch to Kid Mode

1. Touch  >  > **Kid Mode**.
2. On the Zoodles main screen, touch the profile that you created for your child.
3. Touch the icons to access games and apps, play recorded storybook readings, and more.

### Set Child-Accessible Apps in Kid Mode

When in Kid Mode, you can choose which apps on your phone your child will have access to.

1. On the Zoodles main screen, touch **Parent Dashboard**.

**Tip:** You can also go to Parent Dashboard from **Settings > Security > Kid Mode**.

2. Confirm your action with your child lock setting (either by drawing the letter Z on the screen or by entering your birth year).
3. Under Basic Features, touch **Apps**. You'll see a list of apps installed on your phone.
4. If you've set up two or more child accounts, select the child you're giving access to the apps.
5. Touch the check option beside the app that you want your child to have access to in Zoodles, and then touch **Save**.

**Tip:** If you want to receive or block incoming calls while in Kid Mode, touch  > **Device Options** and then select or clear the **Allow Incoming Calls** option.

### Closing Kid Mode

On the Zoodles main screen, touch  and then confirm your action with your child lock setting (either by drawing the letter Z or by entering your birth year).

# Web and Data

---

The following topics address your phone's data connections, the built-in Web browser, and connections to your computer. Additional data-related features can be found in [Accounts and Messaging](#), [Apps and Entertainment](#), and [Tools and Calendar](#).

## Data Services General Information – Sprint Spark LTE and 3G Networks

The following topics will help you learn the basics of using your data services, including managing your user name, launching a data connection, and navigating the Web with your phone.

**Important:** Certain data services requests may require additional time to process. While your phone is loading the requested service, the touchscreen may appear unresponsive when in fact they are functioning properly. Allow the phone some time to process your data usage request.

### Sprint Spark LTE

The Sprint Spark enhanced LTE network provides your phone with wireless Internet access over greater distances than Wi-Fi and delivers data transfer rates of up to 60 Mbps. To connect your phone to Sprint Spark, you must be in an area covered by the Sprint Spark enhanced LTE network.

For more information about the availability of Sprint Spark in your location, visit [sprint.com/coverage](http://sprint.com/coverage).

**Note:** The availability and range of the network depends on a number of factors including your distance to the base station, and infrastructure and other objects through which the signal passes.

### Set Your Network Options

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch .
2. Under Wireless & networks, touch **Mobile data** > **Network mode**.
3. Select **LTE /CDMA** or **Automatic**. The phone will scan for the best available Sprint network and will automatically connect to it.

When your phone is connected via Sprint Spark, the Sprint Spark icon **LTE**  appears in the status bar and tells you the approximate signal strength (number of bands displayed).

**Note:** The network is self-discoverable, which means no additional steps are required for your phone to connect to it.

## Data Connection Status and Indicators

Your phone displays the current status of your data connection through indicators at the top of the screen. The following symbols are used:

| Icon                                                                              | Description                                                                                                                                |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <b>Network</b> (full signal): The number of bars indicate the strength of the signal. More bars mean a better signal.                      |
|  | <b>Sprint Spark</b> (data service): Your phone is connected to the Sprint Spark enhanced LTE network (data service)                        |
|  | <b>3G</b> (data service): Your phone is connected to the 3G network. When the icon animates, your phone is transferring or receiving data. |

## Launch a Web Connection

Launching a Web connection is as simple as opening the browser on your phone.

- Touch  > . Your data connection starts and you see the home page. You can change the default home page. See [Set Browser Options](#).
- Touch  >  > **Mail** or **Messages**. Open a message with a Web page link and then touch it.

## Turn the Data Connection On or Off

Turn your data connection off to optimize the phone's battery life and your data usage.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.
2. Touch the **MOBILE DATA** tile to turn data connection on or off.

**Note:** If you don't have the data connection turned on and you're also not connected to a Wi-Fi network, you won't receive automatic updates to your email, social network accounts, and other synced information.

## Schedule When to Turn Data Connection Off

To help conserve power and data usage, you can set a time period when the data connection will automatically turn off during low peak times. This takes effect after the screen has been off for 15 minutes and there's no network activity (no downloads, streaming, or data usage).

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch .
2. Touch **Power** > **Sleep mode**.

3. To manually change the settings, clear **Learn sleep time automatically** if it's selected.
4. Choose the start and end time when data connection is disabled.
5. Touch the **Sleep mode** ON/OFF switch to turn it on.

The data connection resumes when you switch the screen back on.

## Manage Your Data Usage

If you're on a limited data allowance, it's important to keep track of the activities and apps that usually send and receive data, such as browsing the Web, syncing online accounts, and sending email or sharing status updates.

Here are some other examples:

- Streaming Web videos and music
- Tuning in to Internet radio
- Playing online games
- Downloading apps, maps, and files
- Refreshing apps to update info and feeds
- Uploading and backing up your files to your online storage account
- Using your phone as a Mobile Hotspot
- Sharing your mobile data connection by USB tethering

To help you save on data usage, connect to a Wi-Fi network whenever possible and set your online accounts and emails to sync less frequently.

## Keep Track of Your Data Usage

Monitor your data usage to help prevent going over your monthly data allowance.

**Note:** Data usage measured by your phone may differ from, and be less than, your actual data usage.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch .
2. Under Wireless & networks, touch **More > Data usage**.
3. On the **MOBILE** tab, select **Limit mobile data usage** to automatically disable your data connection when you reach the set limit. Then, drag the upper LIMIT line to set your monthly data limit.

4. Select **Alert me about data usage**, and then drag the lower ALERT line to set an alert before you reach your monthly data limit.
5. Touch **Reset data usage**, and then set the day of the month when your usage cycle resets. This date is usually the start of your monthly billing cycle.
6. Drag the vertical line markers to see how much data you've used during a particular time interval.

**Note:** If you're connecting your phone to another portable Wi-Fi hotspot, touch  > **Mobile hotspots** to restrict background data from downloading that may incur extra data connection.

### View the Data Usage of Apps

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch .
2. Under Wireless & networks, touch **More > Data usage**.
3. On the **MOBILE** tab, drag the vertical line markers to see how much data you've used during a particular time interval.
4. Scroll down the screen to see a list of apps and their data usage info.
5. Touch an app to see more details.

## Wi-Fi

To use your phone's Wi-Fi, you need access to a wireless access point or "hotspot."

**Note:** The availability and range of the Wi-Fi signal depends on a number of factors, including infrastructure and other objects through which the signal passes.

### Turn Wi-Fi On and Connect to a Wireless Network

It's quick and easy to turn Wi-Fi on and connect to a wireless network.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.
2. Touch the **WI-FI** tile to turn Wi-Fi on.
3. Touch  below the **WI-FI** tile to see a list of detected Wi-Fi networks.

**Note:** If the wireless network that you want is not listed, touch  > **Add network** to manually add it.

4. Touch the Wi-Fi network you want to connect to.
5. If you selected a secured network, you'll be asked to enter the network key or password.
6. Touch **Connect**. You'll see the Wi-Fi icon (  ) in the status bar when connected.

The next time your phone connects to a previously accessed secured wireless network, you won't be asked to enter the key or other security information again.

## *Prevent Notifications from Unsecured Wi-Fi Networks*

You can prevent getting notified about unsecured Wi-Fi networks.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.
2. If Wi-Fi connection is off, touch the **WI-FI** tile to turn it on.
3. Touch  below the **WI-FI** tile and check the list of detected Wi-Fi.
4. Touch and hold an unsecured Wi-Fi network you want stop being notified about, and touch **Block network notification**.
5. To unblock an unsecured Wi-Fi network, touch and hold the network name and touch **Unblock network notification**.

## *Connect to a Wi-Fi Network via WPS*

If you're using a Wi-Fi router with Wi-Fi Protected Setup (WPS), you can connect your phone easily.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.
2. If Wi-Fi connection is off, touch the **WI-FI** tile to turn it on.
3. Touch  below the **WI-FI** tile and check the list of detected Wi-Fi.
4. Touch  > **WPS Push**, and then press the WPS button on your Wi-Fi router.

**Note:** To use the Wi-Fi Protected Setup (WPS) PIN method, touch  > **WPS Pin Entry**.

## *Disconnect from a Wireless Network*

Quickly disconnect from a wireless network your phone is connected to.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.
2. If Wi-Fi connection is off, touch the **WI-FI** tile to turn it on.
3. Touch  below the **WI-FI** tile and check the list of detected Wi-Fi.
4. You can:
  - Touch the wireless network that the phone is connected to, and then touch **Disconnect**.
  - If you want to remove the settings for this network, touch and hold the network name, and then touch **Forget network**.



To connect to another wireless network, see [Turn Wi-Fi On and Connect to a Wireless Network](#).

## *Virtual Private Networks (VPN)*

Add virtual private networks (VPNs) so you can connect and access resources inside a local network, such as your corporate network.

Before you can connect to your organization's local network, you may be asked to:

- Install security certificates
- Enter your login credentials
- Download and install a required VPN app on your phone

Contact your network administrator for details. Also, your phone must first establish a Wi-Fi or data connection before you can start a VPN connection. For information about setting up and using these connections on your phone, see [Data Services General Information – Sprint Spark LTE and 3G Networks](#).

### *Add a VPN Connection*

You must first set a lock screen PIN or password before you can use credential storage and set up the VPN.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch .
2. Under Wireless & networks, touch **More > VPN**.
3. Touch  > **Add VPN profile**.
4. Enter the VPN settings and set them up according to the security details your network administrator gave you.
5. Touch **SAVE**.

### *Connect to a VPN*

After you've added a VPN connection, you are now ready to connect and access that network.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch .
2. Under Wireless & networks, touch **More > VPN**.
3. Touch the VPN that you want to connect to.
4. Enter your login credentials, and then touch **CONNECT**. When you are connected, the VPN connected icon  appears in the notification area of the status bar.

You can then open the Web browser to access resources such as your corporate network intranet. For more information, see [Browse the Web](#).

## *Disconnect From a VPN*

Disconnect from the VPN when you're done accessing your intranet sites.

1. Slide the Notifications panel open.
2. Touch the VPN connection, and then touch **Disconnect**.

## *Search for Information*

Start your search by entering a keyword or by using Google Voice Search™.

**Note:** Some apps, such as People or Mail, have their own search function, which you can use to search only within those apps.

## *Perform Searches on the Web and Your Phone*

You can search for information on your phone and on the Web.

1. Touch  >  > **Google**. Or swipe up from the navigation buttons.

**Tip:** If you've already set up a Google Account on your phone, you will be given the option to sign in to Google Now™. To sign in to Google Now at a later time, touch .

2. In the search box, enter what you want to search for. As you type, matching items on your phone and suggestions from Google Web search are shown.
  - To search for the information exclusively on your phone, swipe your finger up the screen, and then touch **Search Phone**.
3. If what you're searching for is in the list of suggestions, touch the item to open it in its compatible app.

## *Search the Web with Your Voice*

Use Google Voice Search to find information on the Web just by speaking to your phone.

1. Touch  >  > **Google**. Or swipe up from the navigation buttons.
2. Touch  and then say what you want to search for. After speaking, matching items from Google web search are shown.
3. If what you're searching for is in the list, touch the item to open it in its compatible app. Otherwise, touch  to search again.

## *Set Search Options*

You can select or customize your search preferences.

1. Touch  >  > **Google**. Or swipe up from the navigation buttons.
2. Touch  > **Settings** to set the following options:
  - **Phone search.** Select which apps on your phone are included when doing a search.
  - **Voice.** Set the Google Voice Search language, speech output, and more.
  - **Accounts & privacy.** Select which Google Account to use for Google search, manage your location settings, enable recent Web searches to show, and more.
  - **Notifications.** Enable or disable notifications for Google Now updates.
  - **Help & feedback.** Check out the Google Now and Google search help or provide feedback.

**Tip:** You can also access the settings when viewing the search results. Pull down the screen to show the hidden menu button, and then touch  > **Settings**.

## *Get Instant Information with Google Now*

Google Now delivers quick and up-to-date information that matters to you — all without the search.

Depending on your location, time of day, and previous Google searches, Google Now displays information cards that include:

- The day's weather and the weather forecast for upcoming days.
- The traffic conditions on your way to work or your commute back home.
- The directions and travel time to your next appointment.
- The next train or bus arriving at your platform or bus stop.
- Your favorite team's score and stats while you enjoy the game.

## **Set Up Google Now**

Before setting up Google Now, make sure that you're signed in to your Google Account, you've turned on location services, and have an Internet connection. For more information on Location services, see [Location Settings](#).

1. Touch  >  > **Google**. Or swipe up from the navigation buttons.
2. Touch **NEXT** on the Get Google Now! screen.
3. Touch **YES, I'M IN**. Google Now information cards will start to appear on the Google search screen.

4. To see all available information cards, swipe up the screen and touch **More**.

Depending on the information that you've allowed to share, more information cards will appear on the Google search screen as you use your phone to search the Web, create appointments, and more.

## Change Card Settings

You can easily customize the settings of Google Now cards to suit your information needs. For example, you can change the weather units in the Weather card or your transportation mode in the Traffic card.

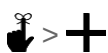
1. Touch  >  > **Google**. Or swipe up from the navigation buttons.
2. Do any of the following:
  - To change a card setting, such as the weather unit on the Weather card, touch , and then touch the arrow buttons when available.
  - To change specific card information such as your work address and sports teams or stocks you follow, scroll to the bottom of the screen, touch , and then touch the information you want to change.

## Dismiss or Hide Cards

1. Touch  >  > **Google**. Or swipe up from the navigation buttons.
2. Do any of the following:
  - To dismiss a card, swipe it left or right.
  - To keep the card from appearing on the Google search screen, scroll to the bottom of the screen and then touch  on the card you want to hide, and then touch **No**.

## Set Reminders in Google Now

Setting reminders in Google Now is an easy way to keep tab of things to do. You can set time or location-based reminders. When the reminder time is up or when you've arrived at the specified location, Google Now displays the Reminder card in the Google Search screen and sounds a notification to alert you.

1. Touch  >  > **Google**. Or swipe up from the navigation buttons.
2. Scroll to the bottom of the screen, and then touch .
3. Enter the reminder title, such as the task you want to be reminded of.
4. Select **WHEN** to set a time-based reminder or **WHERE** to set a location-based reminder.

5. Set the reminder time or location details.
6. Touch **Remind me at this time** or **Remind me at this place**.

When the reminder time is due or when you've arrived at the location, the Reminder card will appear in the Google search screen. You can then dismiss or snooze the reminder.

**Tip:** To see a list of all your reminders, scroll to the bottom of the Google search screen, and then touch .

## Refresh Google Now

Refresh Google Now to update the information cards or show relevant cards for information that you've just added on your phone, like an upcoming event in Calendar.

1. Touch  >  > **Google**. Or swipe up from the navigation buttons.
2. Pull down the screen with your finger, and then release to refresh.

## Turn Off Google Now

1. Touch  >  > **Google**. Or swipe up from the navigation buttons.
2. Scroll to the bottom of the screen, and then touch  > **Settings**.
3. Touch the ON/OFF switch next to **Google Now**, and then touch **Turn off**.

# Browse the Web

A fully-optimized Web browser with all the advanced features will let you enjoy Internet browsing on your phone.

**Note:** Additional browser options, such as Google Chrome™, may also be available on your phone.

## Open the Browser

Follow these steps to launch your phone's Web browser.

1. Touch  > .
2. Touch the URL box on top of the screen. If the webpage is in fullscreen mode, flick the screen down to show the URL box and other options.
3. Enter the webpage address or your search keywords.
4. On the webpage, you can:
  - Touch a link to open it, or touch and hold a link to see more options.

- Touch an email address to send a message to the email address, save it to People, and more.
  - Touch and hold an image to save, copy, or set it as your wallpaper.
5. To return to the previous webpage you've viewed, touch , and then touch  or .

## Maximize Your Browsing Space

- To hide the status bar when browsing, touch  > **Settings** > **General**, and then select **Fullscreen**.
- While browsing a webpage, touch  > **Desktop View** to display the full desktop version of the webpage.

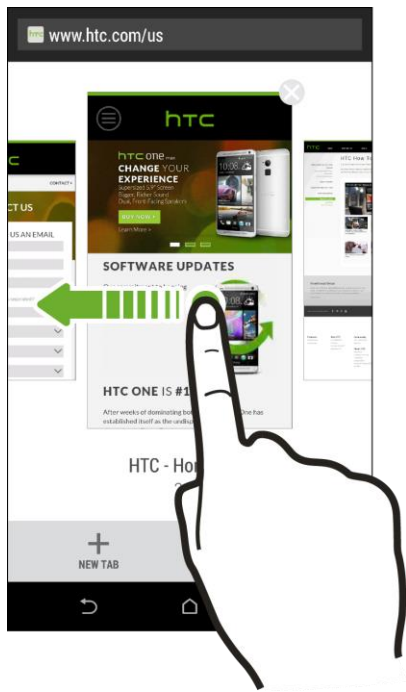
## Find Text In a Web Page

1. While viewing a Web page touch  > **Find in page**.
2. Enter the search item. As you enter characters, matching characters will be highlighted.
3. Touch the left or right arrow to go to the previous or next matching item.

## Use Browser Tabs

Open multiple browser tabs to make it easier for you to switch from one website to another.

1. While viewing a Web page, touch  > . Repeat the same to open new browser tabs.
2. To switch among browser tabs, touch  and swipe to the webpage you want to view. Touch the browser tab to display the webpage in full screen.



3. To close a browser tab, touch  and then touch .

## Save Web Content For Later

Save Web pages to read later, even without an Internet connection. You can also add some video clips on webpages to the Watch list so you can quickly find and watch them whenever you like.

**Note:** Your phone saves webpage text and images only. You will need Internet connection to open linked pages and play video clips.

1. Touch  > .
2. While viewing a Web page, touch  > .
3. Touch **Reading list** or **Watch list**.

**Note:** When the webpage you're adding to the Watch list has one or more video clips, you'll be asked to choose which videos you want to add.

To view a saved webpage or video clip, touch  > **Saved**. Swipe to the **READING LIST** or **WATCH LIST**, and then touch a webpage or video you want to view.

## Add and Manage Your Bookmarks

Add your favorite webpages as bookmarks so you can access them quickly.

## Bookmark a Web Page

1. Touch  > .
2. While viewing a Web page, touch  >  > **Bookmarks**.
3. Edit the bookmark name, sync the bookmark with an online account, or save the bookmark in a new category folder.
4. Touch **DONE**.
8. To view and open a bookmark, touch  > **Bookmarks**. Navigate to the bookmark you want to open, and then touch it.

**Note:** You can also add a bookmark directly to the Home screen. While viewing a webpage, touch  >  > **Home screen**.

**Tip:** Not seeing your bookmark? On the Bookmarks screen, touch  and select **All bookmarks**. Your phone will display all your bookmarks, including those which are synced with an online account.

## Syncing Your Bookmarks with Google Chrome

Create bookmarks from your computer's Google Chrome browser and sync them on your phone. For more information about Google Chrome, visit [support.google.com/chrome](https://support.google.com/chrome).

**Important:** Using your Google Chrome desktop browser, you need to sign in to your Google Account and set up Google Chrome sync.

**Important:** Be sure that you are logged in to your Google Account every time you save Google Chrome bookmarks on your computer.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Accounts & sync**.
2. Touch **Google**, and then touch your Google Account.
3. Select the **Chrome** option.

## Browsing History

Your phone keeps a record of webpages you've visited.

**Note:** If you don't want your phone to keep your browsing history, browse using an incognito tab. See [Private Browsing](#) for details.

## Check your Browsing History

1. While viewing a Web page, touch  > **History**.



2. Swipe to the **HISTORY** or **MOST VISITED** tab.
3. Navigate to the webpage that you want to view, and then touch it.

## Clear Your Browsing History

1. While viewing a Web page, touch  > **Settings** > **Privacy & security** > **Clear history**.
2. Touch **OK**. All webpage entries in the **HISTORY** and **MOST VISITED** tabs are deleted.

**Tip:** If you want to select which webpage entry to delete, go to the **HISTORY** or **MOST VISITED** tab, touch and hold the webpage entry, and then touch **Remove from history** or **Remove from most visited**.

**Note:** Only the browsing history stored by the Internet app is deleted. Browsing history stored by other browsers on your phone will remain unaffected.

## Private Browsing

You can use incognito tabs to browse the Web with more privacy. Browser cookies are not shared and are deleted when you close all incognito tabs. Pages you view in incognito also won't appear in your browser history except for files you download.

- From the browser screen, touch  > .

## Set Browser Options

Customize the Web browser to suit your browsing style. Set display, privacy, and security options when using the browser.

- From the browser screen, touch  > **Settings**.

## Use Google Chrome to Browse the Web

You can also use Google Chrome to surf the Web. Google Chrome features unlimited tabs, incognito tabs, and can sync tabs across your devices when you sign in to your Google Account.

- To open Google Chrome, touch  >  > **Chrome**.
- To learn what you can do and get help on how to use Google Chrome, touch  > **Help**.

## Mobile Hotspot

Share your data connection with other devices by turning on Mobile Hotspot and using your phone as a wireless router.

**Note:** You must have an approved mobile hotspot plan associated with your account to use this service. Contact Sprint for details.

**Note:** Make sure the data connection is turned on.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch .
2. Under Wireless & networks, touch **More**.
3. Touch **Mobile network sharing > Mobile Hotspot**.
4. Enter a router name or use the default router name.
5. Set the password (key) for your wireless router or use the default password.

**Important:** To help minimize security risks, use the default settings and set a secure and unique password.

**Note:** The password is the key other people need to enter on their device so they can connect and use your phone as a wireless router.

6. Touch the **Mobile Hotspot** ON/OFF switch to turn on the wireless router.
7. Your phone is ready to be used as a wireless router when you see  on the status bar.

## *Share Internet Connection via USB Tethering*

Use the data connection of your phone to connect another device to the Internet through tethering a USB cable.

**Note:** To make sure that the USB drivers for HTC One are up-to-date, install the latest version of HTC Sync Manager on your computer.

**Note:** You may need to have USB tethering added to your data plan. Contact Sprint for details.

**Note:** Make sure that mobile data is turned on.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch .
2. Under Wireless & networks, touch **More**.
3. Touch **Mobile network sharing > USB network setting > USB tethering**.

**Tip:** If you often switch between USB tethering and Internet pass-through, select **Smart network sharing** to automatically turn on the connection type you need whenever you connect your phone with your computer.

4. Connect your phone to your computer using the provided USB cable. The next time your phone connects to a computer, it will remember your settings.

# Camera and Video

Take great photos and videos with the camera, and make them more memorable by applying a variety of effects and scenes.

## Get Started with the Camera

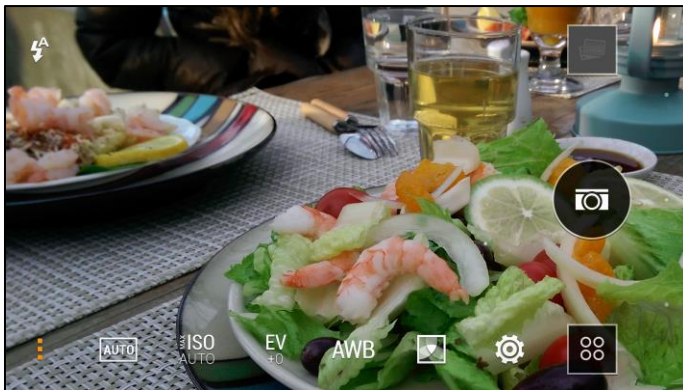
Capture photos quickly with your phone. Just directly launch the camera from the lock screen, even if your phone is password protected.

1. When your display is off, press the **Power** button.
2. Drag  up so you can start taking photos and videos.



**Tip:** From the Home screen, you can also touch  to launch it.

3. Touch  to see all controls on the Viewfinder screen. You can use the controls to switch capture modes, add filters, set the flash, and more.



| Control                                                                                       | What it does                                                                                         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|              | See a collection of camera scenes when taking photos and videos.                                     |
|  ISO<br>AUTO | Choose an ISO level or set it back to <b>Auto</b> . Higher ISO works best in low light conditions.   |
|  EV<br>+0    | Adjust the exposure settings. Higher exposure settings capture more light for your photos or videos. |
|  AWB         | Select a white balance setting that matches your current lighting environment.                       |
|              | Apply photo or video filters.                                                                        |
|              | Modify basic and advanced camera settings.                                                           |

## Choose a Capture Mode

Your phone gives you a variety of capture modes to enjoy.

- On the Viewfinder screen, touch , and then select a capture mode to use.

**Tip:** Choose Camera mode if you want your photos ready for Duo Effects editing in Gallery. See [Duo Effects](#) for details.

## Zooming

- Before taking a photo or video, slide two fingers apart to zoom in or together to zoom out.
- When you're recording video, you can freely zoom in or out while recording.

## Apply a Filter

Use the available filters to make your photos and videos look like they've been taken through special lenses.

**Note:** Some camera modes may not support filters.

1. On the Viewfinder screen, touch  to show the camera options.
2. Touch , and then choose one of the available filters.

## Choose a Flash Mode

- On the Viewfinder screen, touch the flash icon to choose a flash mode.

When using Flash on or Auto flash mode, the camera intelligently sets the best flash brightness for your photo.

## Use the Volume Buttons for Taking Photos and Videos

If you feel much comfortable with using push-buttons when taking photos and videos, you can set your phone to use the **Volume** buttons as the Camera app's shutter release or zoom controls.

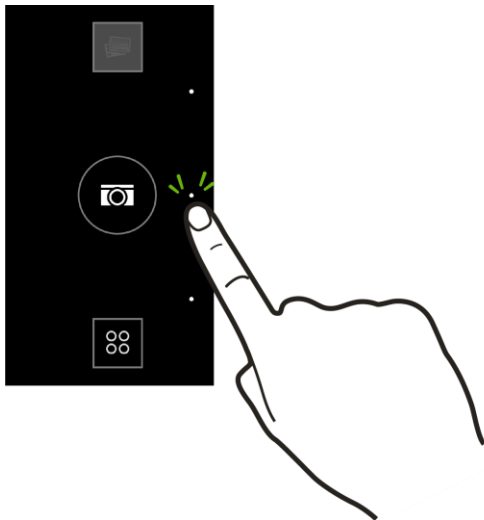
1. Switch to **Camera** or **Video** mode.
2. On the Viewfinder screen, touch  to show the camera options.
3. Touch  > **Volume button options**.
4. Choose how you want to use the volume buttons when you're in the Camera app.

**Tip:** When in Zoe™ camera mode, you can press and hold either **Volume** button to take burst shots with a 3-second clip or record a longer video.

## Close the Camera App

To give you a full view of the Viewfinder screen, your phone replaces , , and  with small dots.

- Touch a dot to show these buttons again, and then touch  or  to close the Camera app and return to the Home screen or the previous screen.



## Take a Photo

Whether it's moving or not, clearly capture any moment with your phone's camera.

1. Open Camera from the lock screen or Home screen.

2. Switch to **Camera** mode.
3. Point the camera at what you want to capture. The camera adjusts the focus automatically as you move it.
4. When you're ready to take the shot, touch .

**Tip:** You can also touch anywhere on the screen to take a photo if you selected **Touch to capture** in  >  > **Camera options**.

## Capture Better Photos

Here are some tips on how to improve the quality of your photos on your phone.

### Improve Focus and Sharpness

- Your phone's camera has autofocus, which works best on a subject that is not moving too much. To change the focus, on the Viewfinder, touch the one you want to focus on.
- If the subject is moving, on the Viewfinder, touch and hold the subject to lock the focus.
- You can manually adjust the sharpness of a photo by editing in the Gallery app. You can also set the sharpness before taking a photo in the Camera settings. Generally, it is better to sharpen a blurry image rather than to reduce the sharpness in an image.

### Take Well-lit Photos

- Your phone automatically adjusts the focus and exposure. If the image appears underexposed or appears dark on the Viewfinder screen, touch a part of the image that is in shadow. Conversely, touch a well-lit object in the image if the image seems to be overexposed. Focus on an object with a neutral tone for a balanced exposure. Keep in mind that touching on another object may shift the focus from your subject.
- If you are using the default settings and the photo still appears too dark, switch to Night scene, but use a tripod or place your phone on a level surface.
- If there are parts of the image that are in shadows and others are in highlights, use **HDR** mode to capture three shots of different exposures and combine them into one shot. Keep your phone steady or place it on a level surface when using HDR.
- When taking a panorama shot, consider the whole scene and focus on an object that has a neutral tone to help keep the exposure balanced in the composite image.
- If your subject is lit from the back, use **Backlight** scene to highlight the foreground and keep some details of the background.

## Other Tips

- In Camera settings, touch **Grid** to help frame the subject better or improve the composition.
- If taking photos under fluorescent or incandescent bulbs and the subject appears to be off-color, touch  > **AWB** and then choose a white balance setting. Check the image on the Viewfinder and select the option that displays the closest color to the natural color of the subject.
- In Camera settings, you can touch **Image adjustments** and adjust the exposure, contrast, and others before taking the photo.
- After capturing the photo, you can continue to edit the contrast, brightness, and others in the Gallery app.

## Record a Video

Capture high-definition video clips that you can later share or create into movies.

1. Open Camera from the lock screen or Home screen.
2. Switch to **Video** mode.
3. When you're ready to start recording, touch .
4. Change focus to a different subject or area by just touching it on the Viewfinder screen.
5. Touch the flash icon to turn the flash on or off.
6. Touch  to pause the recording, and then touch  to resume.
7. To stop recording, touch .

## Take a Photo While Recording a Video (VideoPic®)

**Note:** Make sure that you're in **Auto** scene to use this feature.

- While you're recording video using the main camera, touch  to capture a still shot of your subject.

## Set the Video Resolution

1. Open Camera from the lock screen or Home screen.
2. Switch to **Video** mode.
3. On the Viewfinder screen, touch .
4. Touch  > **Video Quality**, and then choose a video resolution.

## Duo Camera Tips

Use your phone to take and edit professional-looking photos without having to worry about "configuring" advanced settings for effects you usually get from DSLR cameras, such as bokeh and 2.5D perspective.

Just launch the Camera app to take photos, and then apply the effects in Gallery afterwards. See [Duo Effects](#) for more information.

Here are some tips to keep in mind so that your photos are ready for Gallery.

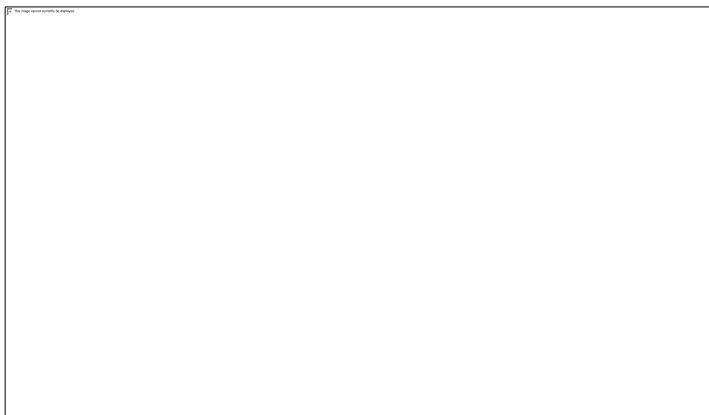
### Settings

Switch to **Camera** mode and be sure to have these options set to the following:

- Scene: Auto
- Flash: Off
- Filters: None
- Aspect ratio: Wide 16:9 (in  >  > **Crop**)
- Zooming: Minimum zoom level
- Continuous shooting: Not supported

### Lighting

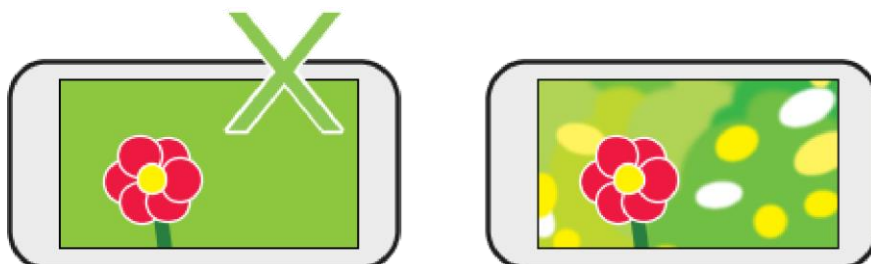
- Use Duo camera in an environment where there is a good light source. Post-processing effects for Duo camera do not work for low light photography or when you're using the camera flash.
- If lighting is uneven, like when the background is a little bit under or overexposed, touch  > **EV** <sub>+0</sub> to adjust the exposure settings.
- Hold your phone so that you don't block the second camera lens.



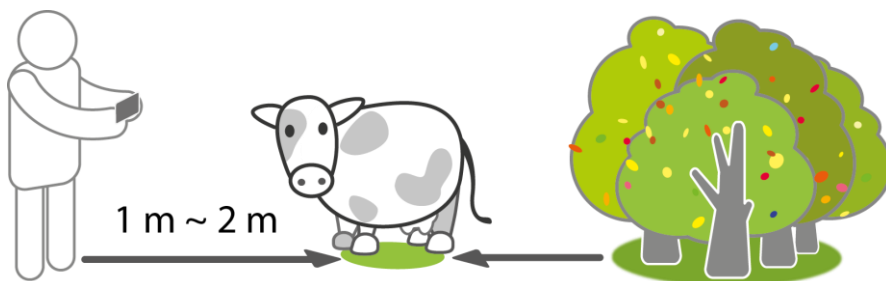


## Composition

- Match your subject with an interesting background. Positioning your subject with some lights or a garden in the background will add color and distinction to your photo, especially if you'll use the UFocus™ feature in Gallery. See [Duo Effects](#) for details.



- Post-processing effects for Duo camera may not work if your subject and background are too close or when you're taking a close-up shot. So, mind the distance between your subject and your background, as well as the distance between the camera and your subject.



**Tip:** Still life photography looks great with Dimension Plus™ post processing. If you'll use Dimension Plus, however, you can arrange your subject and background to be closer together and the distance between your camera and subject can be at least 25 centimeters (10 inches).

**Tip:** Duo camera doesn't support zooming.

## Take Continuous Camera Shots

Take photos of moving subjects. Whether it's your kid's football game or a car race, you can capture the action.

**Note:** Make sure that you're in **Auto** scene to use this feature.

1. Open Camera from the lock screen or Home screen.
2. Switch to **Camera** mode.
3. On the Viewfinder screen, just touch and hold . The camera takes up to 20 consecutive shots of your subject.

4. After taking the shots, do any of the following:
  - To keep just one photo, select the photo that you like the most, and then touch **BEST SHOT**.
  - To save the photos as a batch, touch .

**Tip:** To get creative with your photos, open and edit them in the Gallery app. Additional editing features are available for a batch of continuous shots, such as Sequence Shot, Always Smile, and Object Removal.

## Use Zoe Camera

Don't let the best moments just pass by. When timing is everything, capture the exact moment with your phone and get more than just a still photo.

With just a convenient button in Zoe camera mode, you can:

- Take a photo.
- Capture a combo of burst shots and a 3-second video clip for advanced editing features in Gallery, such as such as Sequence Shot, Always Smile, and Object Removal. See [Access Photos and Videos](#) for details.
- Record a longer video and also capture burst shots during the first three seconds.

**Note:** Some camera features are not available when you're using Zoe mode, such as zooming.

1. Open Camera from the lock screen or Home screen.
2. Switch to **Zoe camera** mode.
3. Touch  once to take a photo.
4. Touch and hold  for three seconds to capture a burst shot and a 3-second video clip.
5. To continue recording video, touch and hold  until you see the **Locked** status right above .

When taking your burst shots with a 3-second video clip, it's good practice to:

- Keep your phone steady to capture moving subjects against a static background scene.
- If using Sequence Shot to stitch different action shots into one photo, encourage the subject to make obvious lateral movements.
- When taking a group photo, ask your subjects to hold the pose until you have finished capturing.

## Take a Selfie

It's easy to take a selfie.

1. Open Camera from the lock screen or Home screen.
2. Switch to **Selfie** mode. Or, switch to the front camera by swiping from the left or right edge of your phone's screen.
3. Touch anywhere on the screen to start the timer. The camera takes a photo after the countdown.

**Note:** Some camera features are not available when you're using the front camera, such as zooming.

## Improve Portrait Shots

If you'd like your family or friends to look their best in your photos, make sure to use the portrait scene. It smoothenes the skin in your shots.

1. Open Camera from the lock screen or Home screen.
2. Switch to **Camera** or **Selfie** mode.
3. On the Viewfinder screen, touch .
4. Touch  > .
5. When you're ready to take the photo, touch .

## Take a Panoramic Photo

Get a wider shot of landscapes in one sweep.

**Note:** Some camera features are not available when you're in this mode, such as zooming.

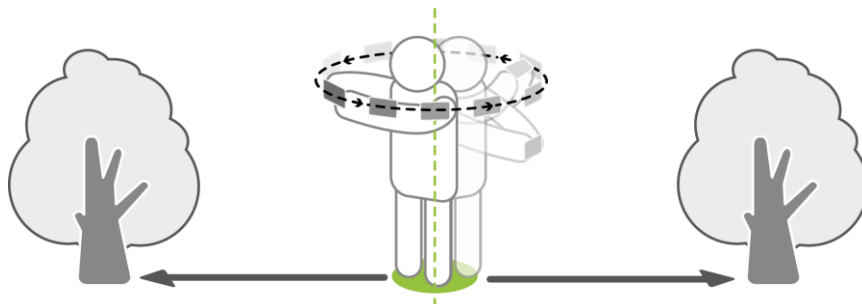
1. Open Camera from the lock screen or Home screen.
2. On the Viewfinder screen, touch .
3. Touch , and then touch .
4. When you're ready to take the shot, touch .
5. Pan left or right in either landscape or portrait view. Hold your phone as smoothly as you can to automatically capture frames. You can also touch  to stop capturing anytime.
6. The camera stitches the frames into a single photo.

## Take a Pan 360 Photo

The world isn't flat and your photos shouldn't be either. Take a 360-degree panorama of what's around you.

For best results, remember to:

- Avoid capturing scenes with moving objects.
- Keep at least five meters (16 feet) distance from the scene.



**Note:** Some camera features are not available when you're in this mode, such as zooming.

1. Open Camera from the lock screen or Home screen.
2. Switch to **Pan 360** mode.
3. Hold your phone at face level so you'll have more room to capture scenes above or below you.
4. When you're ready to take the first shot, center the white box within the Viewfinder markers.
5. Stand in the same spot once you've started capturing, even as you turn around to take more shots.
6. To take succeeding shots, pan your phone as smoothly as you can, and then center another box within the Viewfinder markers. Do this repeatedly until you get your desired frames or when you don't see any more boxes.
7. To stop capturing anytime, touch .

Photos taken with Pan 360 are indicated by the  icon in Gallery.

## Use Dual Capture Mode

You can use both cameras at the same time when taking shots. With dual capture mode, you can capture the scene and your own self-portrait in a single photo or video.

1. Open Camera from the lock screen or Home screen.

2. Switch to **Dual capture** mode.
3. Choose the primary frame by switching to either the main or front camera.
4. To adjust the secondary frame, drag it to its new position or slide two fingers to resize it.
5. Touch  to take a photo or  to record a video.



## Use HDR

When shooting portraits against a bright background, use HDR, short for High Dynamic Range, to capture your subjects clearly. HDR brings out the details of both the highlights and shadows, even in high contrast lighting.

**Note:** HDR works best when your subject is steady. The camera takes multiple shots at different exposure levels and combines them into one enhanced photo.

1. Open Camera from the lock screen or Home screen.
2. Switch to **Camera** mode. Or to capture an HDR video, switch to **Video** mode.
3. On the Viewfinder screen, touch .
4. Touch , and then touch . For an HDR video, touch  beside the menu button, and then touch .
5. To take an HDR photo, touch . Touch  to start recording.

## Record Slow Motion Videos

Relive high speed action bit by bit and add a touch of suspense to your videos.

**Note:** Audio is recorded when you're in this scene, but will be turned on only when video is played in normal speed.

1. Open Camera from the lock screen or Home screen.
2. Switch to **Video** mode.

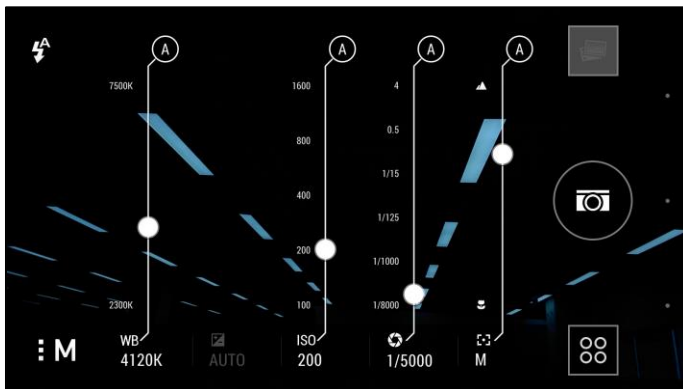
3. On the Viewfinder screen, touch  to show the camera options.
4. Touch  beside the menu button, and then touch .
5. Touch  to start recording.
6. To stop recording, touch .

After recording your slow motion video, you can change the playback speed of selected sections when you edit the video in Gallery.

## Manually Adjusting Camera Settings

Take expert command of your camera settings for different environments or lighting conditions. You can manually increase or decrease the values for settings like white balance, exposure, ISO, and more.

1. Open Camera from the lock screen or Home screen.
2. Switch to **Camera** mode.
3. On the Viewfinder screen, touch  to show the camera options.
4. Touch **AUTO**, and then touch **M**.
5. Touch an item at the bottom of the Viewfinder screen, and then drag its slider up or down to adjust the setting.



6. When done, touch  to show or hide the manual settings.
7. Touch  to take a photo.

**Tip:** You can save your customized settings as a new camera mode. See [Save Your Settings as a Camera Mode](#).

## Save Your Settings as a Camera Mode

Save a scene or custom settings as a new camera mode so you can conveniently use it anytime you need it.

1. Open Camera from the lock screen or Home screen.
2. Switch to the camera mode you want to use.

**Note:** Some camera modes may not support modifying the camera settings.

3. On the Viewfinder screen, touch  to show the camera options.
4. Modify the settings as desired.
5. When done, touch  > **Save as camera**.
6. Enter a name, and then touch **SAVE**.
7. Touch , and then swipe the screen to choose the newly created camera mode.

## Modify a Customized Camera Mode

1. Open Camera from the lock screen or Home screen.
2. Switch to the camera mode that you've created.
3. Modify the scene or settings.
4. When done, touch  > **Save as camera**.
5. Touch **Yes** to save changes to the existing mode.

## Change Camera and Video Settings

Change basic settings or an additional advanced settings menu is available for camera and video.

1. On the Viewfinder screen, touch  > .
2. As well as changing basic camera and video settings, you can also:
  - Change the review duration to set how long a captured photo or video will be displayed on the Review screen before the camera changes back to the Viewfinder screen.
  - Automatically take a shot when your subject smiles (photo mode only).
  - Geo-tag photos to store GPS location in your captured photos (photo mode only).

- Automatically upload photos to a social network (photo mode only). You can set the upload frequency, select the album to upload to, and set the privacy level.

## *Access Photos and Videos*

Reminisce on good times. Use Gallery to view all your photos and videos. View them by time, album, or location. When viewing your photos and videos, the onscreen navigation buttons will be hidden. Touch anywhere on the screen to see Gallery controls and onscreen navigation buttons.

### *View Photos and Videos Organized by Time*

Photos and videos on your phone are grouped together in Timeline view according to when they were taken.

1. Touch  >  > **Gallery**.
2. On the Gallery app's main screen, swipe to the **TIMELINE** tab. You'll see a video highlight and thumbnails for every time period.
3. Scale the time period by sliding two fingers together or apart or touching . You can choose between event, day, month, and year.
4. Touch a time period to see all related photos and videos.
5. Touch a photo or video to see it in full screen.

### *View Photos and Videos by Album*

You can choose to view your photos and videos grouped together in albums.

1. Touch  >  > **Gallery**.
2. Swipe to the **ALBUMS** tab.
3. Touch a tile to open an album.
4. Touch a photo or video to see it in full screen.

### *View Photo Highlights*

Easily see all your favorite photos in one place. Gallery automatically groups all your most viewed or shared photos (your highlights) in one album. You can also manually add photos to this album.

- To view these favorite photos, open the **Highlights** album.
- To manually add a photo, find and view the photo in full screen, touch the photo, and then touch .



- To remove a photo from the **Highlights** album, press and hold the thumbnail and then touch **Remove**.

## Copy or Move Photos or Videos to Another Album

1. Touch  >  > **Gallery**.
2. Swipe to the **ALBUMS** tab.
3. Touch a tile to open an album.
4. Touch  > **Move to** or **Copy to**.
5. Select the photos or videos you want to move or copy and then touch **NEXT**.
6. Select an album to move or copy the photos or videos to. To create a new album to move or copy to, touch .

**Note:** To move or copy a single photo or video, open an album and then touch and hold the photo or video. Choose whether to move or copy the photo or video and then select the destination album or create a new album.

## Show or Hide Albums

Have too many albums cluttering your Gallery? You can choose to show or hide albums.

1. Touch  >  > **Gallery**.
2. Swipe to the **ALBUMS** tab.
3. Touch  > **Show/hide albums** and choose which albums you'd like to show or hide.

## Rename an Album

If you have created albums to organize photos, you can rename these albums.

1. Touch  >  > **Gallery**.
2. Swipe to the **ALBUMS** tab.
3. Touch and hold the album you want to rename.
4. Touch **Rename**.

**Note:** Some albums, like **Camera shots** and **Highlights**, cannot be renamed.

## View Photos by Location

Using Map view, you can view photos according to location.

**Note:** Only photos with geo-tag info appear on the map.

1. Touch  >  > **Gallery**.
2. Swipe to the **LOCATIONS** tab. You'll see tiles of photos taken at specific locations, with numbers that indicate how many photos were taken in each location.
3. Touch  to display Map view.
4. Zoom out or pan across the map until a numerical location indicator  appears. The number in the location indicator shows how many photos were taken in that area.
5. Touch the location indicator. The photos taken in the same area are displayed.

**Tip:** Want to know where you took a particular photo? While viewing the photo in full screen, touch anywhere on the screen, and then touch  > **Show on map**. (**Show on map** is available when you've enabled **Geo-tag photos** in Camera.)

### Add Location Information

To be more specific about your photos, you can add names of points of interests (POI) to your photos, too.

1. Touch  >  > **Gallery**.
2. Swipe to the **LOCATIONS** tab.
3. Touch a tile to open it.
4. Swipe to the **PLACES** tab.
5. Touch **Tap to edit location > Add a new place**.
6. Touch a point of interest to add a Foursquare® POI or touch **New place** to manually enter a new name.
7. Touch **SAVE**.

### Change Location Information

To be more specific about your photos, you can add names of points of interests (POI) to your photos, too.

1. Touch  >  > **Gallery**.
2. Swipe to the **LOCATIONS** tab.
3. Touch a tile to open it.
4. Swipe to the **PLACES** tab.
5. Find the grouping you want to rename or edit, touch , and then touch:

- **Edit location** to change the location information.
- **Rename this place** to change the location name. This option appears only if you've manually added and saved a new location to the photo.

6. Touch **SAVE**.

## Find Matching Photos

Use Image match to find photos faster instead of browsing through Gallery.

1. Touch  >  > **Gallery**.
2. Swipe to the **TIMELINE**, **ALBUMS** or **LOCATIONS** tab.
3. Touch  and find a photo that is visually similar to what you want to find.
4. Touch the photos that are most similar to what you want to find and do one of the following:
  - Touch **CONTINUE** to display more matches.
  - Touch **FINISH** to see the results.
5. On the Images matched screen, touch all of the images you want to save to a new album, and then touch **SAVE**.

**Tip:** You can also find matching images while viewing a photo in full screen. Touch  > **Image match**.

## Edit Your Photos

Make your pictures even better. Gallery has an array of editing tools that let you crop, rotate, apply and create photo filters, and much more to your photos.

1. Touch  >  > **Gallery**.
2. Open the photo you want in full screen, touch it, and then touch .
3. Do any of the following:
  - Touch  to apply a special effect to the photo.
  - Touch  to apply a filter to the photo.
  - Touch  to add a decorative frame to the photo.
  - Touch  to draw, rotate, crop, flip, or straighten the photo.
4. Touch **DONE**.

**Note:** Except for when applying rotation, edited photos are saved as copies of the original.

## Draw Over a Photo

Get more creative with your photos or highlight an interesting part. You can also use the pen (sold separately) to draw.

1. Touch  >  > **Gallery**.
2. Open the photo you want in full screen, touch it, and then touch .
3. Touch  > **DRAW**.
4. Touch , and then choose a pen stroke, color, and thickness.
5. Draw over the photo.
6. Touch **DONE** > .

The edited photo is saved as a copy. The original photo remains unedited.

## Add Custom Filter to Photos

**Note:** Filters can only be applied to photos that are stored locally.

1. Touch  >  > **Gallery**.
2. Open the photo you want in full screen, touch it, and then touch .
3. Touch .
4. Scroll to the available effects and then touch **CUSTOM**. You'll find **CUSTOM** at the end of the predefined filters bar.
5. On the Custom Effects screen you can:
  - Make changes to the filter by adjusting the controls on exposure, saturation, white balance, and more.
  - Rearrange filters to modify the effect. Touch and hold the filter you want to move. Then drag it to a new position.
  - Remove filters. Touch and hold the filter you want to remove. Then drag it to **REMOVE**.
  - Touch  to add more filters.
6. Touch **SAVE PRESET** to name your filter and save it. After saving your filter, you'll see a preview of your photo with the filter applied.

7. Touch ✓ to save the modified photo as a new photo.

## Duo Effects

Liven up photos taken on your phone with Duo Effects. Do creative things with your photos such as changing the subject of the focus, applying artistic filters to the background, changing the angle of the photo, and more. See [Duo Camera Tips](#) to learn how to take Duo Effects capable photos.

### Change the Focus in a Photo (UFocus)

It's easy to change the focus in a photo taken with the Duo camera. With UFocus you can create different versions of the same moment, anytime.

1. Touch 🏠 > 📱 > **Gallery**.
2. Open the photo you want in full screen, touch it, and then touch 📐.
3. Touch 📐 and then touch [•].
4. Touch anywhere on the photo to focus on objects in the same relative distance.

Original photo:



With UFocus:



5. Touch  to save the modified photo as a new photo.

### Add Artistic Effects to the Background (Foregrounder)

Give your photos an artistic touch such as applying a pencil sketch look to the background.

1. Touch  >  > **Gallery**.
2. Open the photo you want in full screen, touch it, and then touch .
3. Touch  and then touch .

4. Touch a thumbnail to apply the effect.



5. Touch ✓ to save the modified photo as a new photo.

### Add Animated Seasons

Add some seasonal moods to your photos.

1. Touch  >  > **Gallery**.
2. Open the photo you want in full screen, touch it, and then touch .
3. Touch  and then touch .

4. Touch a season to apply the effect.



5. Touch **01** or to add a timestamp or location information on the photo.
6. Touch > **Save as photo** or **Save as video**.

### Change the Angle of the Photo (Dimension Plus)

View your photo from a slightly different viewpoint. With Dimension Plus, you can create the illusion that the photo was taken at a different angle.

1. Touch > > **Gallery**.
2. Open the photo you want in full screen, touch it, and then touch .
3. Touch and then touch .
4. Try any of the following:
  - Tilt your phone to see the photo from different angles.
  - Touch at the bottom-left corner and then drag your finger on the screen to change the angle. Touch to return to tilt mode.
5. Touch to save the photo, and then choose how to save it.

### Fine Tune Your 3D Subject

1. Touch > > **Gallery**.



2. Open the photo you want in full screen, touch it, and then touch .
3. Touch  and then touch .
4. Touch .
5. Draw an outline around the objects you want as your main subjects. You can refine your selection by using the  or  tools.

**Tip:** Touch  to zoom and pan for a more accurate selection.

6. Touch **DONE** to finish selecting your subjects.

## Copy and Paste Photos

You can use Copy & Paste with photos that clearly show human faces.

1. Touch  >  > **Gallery**.
2. Open the photo you want in full screen, touch it, and then touch .
3. Touch , and then touch .
4. Find the photo you want to copy a person from and touch it.
5. Touch a face to select a person. You can refine your selection by using the  or  tools.

**Tip:** Touch  to zoom and pan for a more accurate selection.

6. Touch **DONE** to finish copying.
7. Try any of the following:
  - **Scale the copy.** Slide two fingers together or apart.
  - **Rotate the copy.** Rotate two fingertips on the screen.
  - **Move the copy.** Drag the copy to a new position.
  - **Place the copy behind another person.** First, touch , and then touch a person's face to select. Touch **DONE**. If you want to change the order, touch  or .
8. Touch **DONE** > .

## View Pan 360 Photos

Enjoy viewing your Pan 360 photos with these instructions.

1. Touch  >  > **Gallery**.

2. Swipe to the **TIMELINE**, **ALBUMS** or **LOCATIONS** tab.
3. Touch a tile to open the thumbnail view.
4. When you see the Pan 360 photo you want, touch it to view in full screen. You'll know it's a Pan 360 photo as it is indicated by the icon  on the thumbnail.
5. Touch  to explore the Pan 360 photo.
6. Try any of the following:
  - Tilt your phone or drag your finger on the screen to pan the photo.
  - Touch the rotation indicator at the top left corner to re-center the photo.
  - Slide two fingers together or apart to zoom the photo.
  - Rotate two fingers to rotate the photo.
  - Touch  to save the current view of the photo.

## Create an Animated Gif

Create an animated gif that you can quickly upload and share.

**Note:** You can save a batch of shots that was captured with continuous shooting mode as an animated gif.

**Note:** You can also create an animated gif from a clip taken in Zoe camera mode.

1. Touch  >  > **Gallery**.
2. Open the photo you want in full screen, touch it, and then touch .
3. Touch  and then touch . You'll see an animation of the frames.
4. Drag the trim sliders to the part where you want the animated gif to begin and end.
5. Touch **NEXT**.
6. On the next screen, you can choose the direction you want the animation to play, set the speed of the animation, choose which frames you want to include, and more.
7. Touch  to save or touch  to save and share the edited gif.

The edited gif is saved as a copy. The original photo remains unedited.

## Create an Action Sequence Shot

Create a sequence shot to stitch a series of actions in one photo.

**Note:** This feature is available for a batch of shots that was captured with continuous shooting mode.

**Note:** You can also use this feature for clips taken in Zoe camera mode.

1. Touch  >  > **Gallery**.
2. Open the photo you want in full screen, touch it, and then touch .
3. Touch  and then touch . You'll see frames that you can combine in one photo.
4. Select the frames that you want to include in the sequence shot.
5. Touch **DONE** > .

The edited photo is saved as a copy. The original photo remains unedited.

## *Edit a Group Shot*

You can choose a group shot with the most smiles and the fewest blinks. Retouch a group shot so everyone looks their best in the photo.

**Note:** This feature is available for a batch of shots that was captured with continuous shooting mode.

**Note:** You can also use this feature for clips taken in Zoe camera mode.

1. Touch  >  > **Gallery**.
2. Open the photo you want in full screen, touch it, and then touch .
3. Touch  and then touch . You'll see circles around any faces detected in the photo.
4. Select one face at a time and drag it sideways with your finger to select the expression you want.
5. After making your changes, touch **DONE** > .

The edited photo is saved as a copy. The original photo remains unedited.

## *Remove Unwanted Objects in a Photo*

Remove people or objects that ruin your otherwise perfect shot of a famous landmark. Retouch the photo to remove unwanted people or objects.

**Note:** This feature is available for a batch of shots that was captured with continuous shooting mode.

**Note:** You can also use this feature for clips taken in Zoe camera mode.

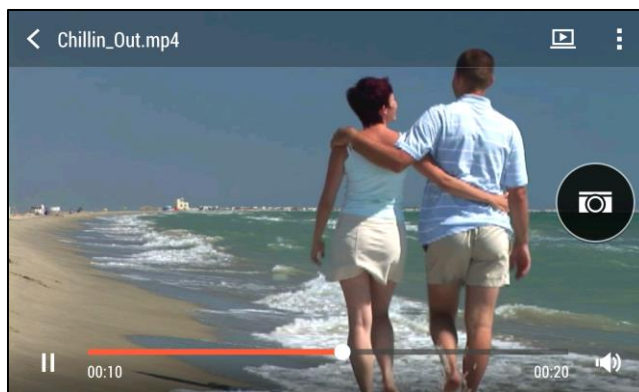
1. Touch  >  > **Gallery**.
2. Open the photo you want in full screen, touch it, and then touch .
3. Touch  and then touch . You'll see frames around areas in the photo where objects have been automatically removed.
4. To retain an object, touch  on its image on the film strip.
5. After making your changes, touch **DONE** > .

The edited photo is saved as a copy. The original photo remains unedited.

## Watch and Trim Videos

While watching a video you've captured, you can trim it to remove unwanted scenes, and more.

1. Touch  >  > **Gallery**.
2. Swipe to the **TIMELINE** or **ALBUMS** tab.
3. When you see the video you want, touch it to play in full screen.
4. Touch the onscreen controls to pause or resume playback, adjust the volume, and more.



**Tip:** Touch  to share the video on your home network.

5. To trim the video, touch  > **Edit**.
6. Drag the two trim sliders to the part where you want the video to begin and end.
7. Touch  to preview your trimmed video.
8. Touch **SAVE**.

The trimmed video is saved as a new file. The original video remains unedited.

## Save a Photo From a Video

1. Touch  >  > **Gallery**.
2. Swipe to the **TIMELINE** or **ALBUMS** tab.
3. When you see the video you want, touch it to play in full screen.
4. While watching the video, touch  to capture a still shot.

You can also pause the playback and drag the slider to the image you want before touching .

## Change the Video Playback Speed

Add a cinematic flair to your videos by slowing down particular scenes. You can vary the playback speed of selected sections of a slow motion video.

**Note:** You can only change the video playback speed of videos captured using the slow motion scene in Camera.

1. Touch  >  > **Gallery**.
2. Swipe to the **TIMELINE**, **ALBUMS** or **LOCATIONS** tab.
3. When you see the slow motion video you want (marked with ) , touch it to play in full screen.
4. Touch  to switch between normal and slow motion playback.
5. To adjust the playback speed of the video, touch  > **Edit** > **Adjust playback speed**.
6. Frame the sequence you want to slow down by moving the left and right sliders.
7. Drag the slider up or down to choose how fast you want the sequence to play.
8. Touch  to watch the result.
9. Touch **SAVE**.

The edited video is saved as a new file. The original video remains unedited.

## Zoe™

Learn how to create Zoes in Gallery or the Zoe app.

## Creating a Zoe in Gallery

When you view a group of photos and videos such as an album, Gallery automatically composes a Zoe. A Zoe is a collection of photos and videos that Gallery has preselected, with added background music and special effects.

You can change the content, theme, and music. You can also save or share the Zoe as a video.

1. Touch  >  > **Gallery**.
2. Swipe to the **TIMELINE**, **ALBUMS** or **LOCATIONS** tab.
3. Touch a tile to open a group of photos and videos. You'll then see the Zoe play automatically.
4. If you want to edit the Zoe, touch the Zoe tile, and then touch .
5. To change the content in the Zoe:
  - Swipe to the **CONTENT** tab to select the ones you want to include in the Zoe.
  - Touch  > **Remix** to shuffle the content.
  - Touch  > **Choose start and end clips** to select specific photos or videos to start and end the Zoe.
6. Swipe to the **THEMES** tab to choose the special effects and music to apply to the Zoe.
7. Swipe to the **MUSIC** tab, touch **Search my library** to change the background soundtrack for all themes. To restore the default soundtrack, touch  > **Restore theme's music**.

**Important:** Do not reproduce, distribute, or otherwise use copyrighted materials in connection with the Zoe unless you have secured the copyright owner's permission first.

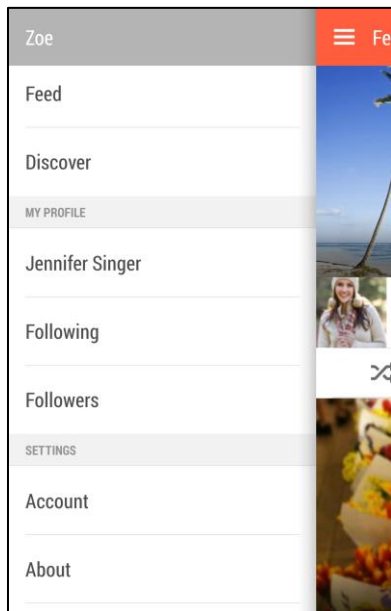
8. To trim the chosen soundtrack and include audio that was captured with the video included in the Zoe, touch  > **Music settings**.
9. To preview the Zoe in full screen, hold your phone in landscape orientation.
10. To create a video file of the Zoe, touch  > **Save**, and then choose a video quality.

Your video will be saved in the Highlights album.

## *About the Zoe App*

The Zoe app combines photos and videos that you and your friends have taken (at the same event, for example) and shared. Engage with the Zoe community, where everyone's content is public.

- To download and install the Zoe app, touch  >  > **Zoe**.



When using the app, here are a few key terms that you should know about:

- **Zoe.** A video collage of your photos and videos, automatically added with theme and soundtrack.
- **Clip.** A photo or video that you can choose to include in a Zoe, including any contributions from its remixes.
- **Remix.** A new Zoe created when you reshuffle or add more clips to another Zoe and also when you change its original theme and soundtrack.

When you open the Zoe app the first time, you'll need to sign in with your HTC Account. You can also use your Google Account or Facebook account to sign in for an HTC Account. Your use of the Zoe app is subject to the HTC Account Terms and Conditions or applicable Terms of Use.

To learn more about the Zoe app, swipe right to open the slideout menu, and then touch the link to the help content.

# Tools and Calendar

---

Learn how to use many of your phone's productivity-enhancing features.

## Calendar

Use the Calendar app to schedule your events, meetings, and appointments. If you've signed into your online accounts, related events will also appear in Calendar.

### View the Calendar

Open the Calendar app.

1. Touch  >  > **Calendar**.
2. Touch , and then choose a calendar view.

**Tip:** In any calendar view, return to the current date by touching .

### Month View

In month view, you will see markers on days that have events. Upcoming events for the day are also shown at the bottom of the screen.

- Swipe left or right across the screen to view succeeding or previous months.
- Touch a day to view the events for that day.
- Touch and hold a day to see more options.

### Day and Agenda Views

Day view shows your day's schedule and weather forecast for the next few days, while agenda view gives a quick glance of all your day's events.

- Swipe left or right across the screen to view succeeding or previous days.
- Touch an event to view its details.
- If the event is a contact's birthday or anniversary, touch it to send a greeting.

**Note:** Need to see the event time in another time zone? In Day view, touch  > **Select 2nd time zone** > **Choose location**, and then enter the city name.

### Week View

Week view displays a chart of the events of one week.



- Swipe left or right across the screen to view succeeding or previous weeks.
- Touch an event (shown as colored blocks) to view its details.

## Schedule or Edit an Event

You can create or edit events on your phone, and also sync events with your Google or Exchange ActiveSync calendars.

**Note:** Editing events is not supported for all accounts.

1. Touch  >  > **Calendar**.
2. On any Calendar view, do one of the following:
  - **Create an event.** Touch . Touch , and then select the calendar you will add the event to.
  - **Edit an event.** View an event, and then touch .
3. Enter and set the event details.
4. To invite from your Google or Exchange ActiveSync account, touch .
5. Touch **SAVE**. Or if you've invited people to the event, touch **SEND** or **SEND UPDATE**.

## Check Your Schedule for an Event

Avoid juggling multiple meetings at the same time. In Calendar, you can check your appointments to see if a new event would conflict with your schedule.

1. When creating or editing an event, touch **Check calendar**.
2. Touch and hold the event box, and then drag it to an available time slot.
3. Drag the top and bottom nodes to adjust the event's time duration. You'll see a message if there are conflicts with other scheduled events.
4. Touch **Done** to return to the event screen, and then save your event.

## Choose Which Calendar to Show

You have the option to show only the calendars that you frequently use. You can also show or hide tasks that you've created in your phone.

1. Touch  >  > **Calendar**.
2. Touch  > **Accounts (All calendars)** or **Accounts (Multi-calendar)**.
3. Select or clear an account you wish to show or hide. If you have multiple calendars under an online account, touch  to select the items to include.

**Note:** Calendars are synced on your phone, even if they are hidden.

**Tip:** You can also show or hide tasks that you've created on your phone.

## Calendar Events Not Showing?

If you can't find events from your email accounts or social networks in Calendar, check whether the Calendar sync is turned on in Settings.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Accounts & sync**.
2. Touch an account type. If multiple accounts are supported (such as Exchange ActiveSync), touch the account you want to sync.
3. Select **Calendar**, and then touch  > **Sync now**.

## Share an Event (vCalendar)

You can share a calendar event as a vCalendar using Bluetooth or by sending it as a file attachment with your email or message.

1. Touch  >  > **Calendar**.
2. Do one of the following:
  - While viewing an event, touch  > **Share via**.
  - In day, agenda or week view, touch and hold an event and then touch **Share via**.
3. Choose how you want to send the event.

**Tip:** You can also forward accepted meeting invitations from your Exchange ActiveSync calendar. While viewing an event, touch  > **Forward**. Compose your email message, and then send it.

## Accept or Decline a Meeting Invitation

Switch to the Invites view to see meeting invitations which you have not yet accepted or declined.

**Note:** You must set up an Exchange ActiveSync account to receive meeting invitations in Calendar.

1. Touch  >  > **Calendar**.
2. Touch  > **Invites**, and then touch a meeting invitation.
3. Accept, decline, or tentatively accept the invitation, or propose a new time.

**Tip:** Touch  to choose from more options, such as moving the invitation to a folder.

If you need to cancel an accepted meeting invitation or propose a new time, view the event details in Calendar, and then touch **RESPONSE**.

## *Dismiss or Snooze Reminders*

If you have set at least one reminder for an event, the upcoming event icon  will appear in the notifications area of the status bar to remind you.

1. Open the Notifications panel.
2. If the notification shows that there are multiple reminders, touch it to see all the reminders. You can then choose to snooze or dismiss them.
3. If you see a single event notification, spread your two fingers on the notification to expand it. You can then:
  - Touch **SNOOZE** or **DISMISS**. Or drag the notification left or right to dismiss it.
  - Touch **SEND MAIL** to send a quick response to the meeting attendees.

**Tip:** To edit the preset quick responses or add your own, open Calendar, and then touch  > **Settings > Quick response**.

If you don't want to dismiss or snooze the calendar reminders, touch  from the Notifications panel to keep them pending in the notifications area of the status bar.

## *Calculator*

Your phone comes with a built-in calculator.

1. Touch  >  > **Calculator**.
2. Enter numbers or formulas using the onscreen keys.
3. Do any of the following:
  - Turn your phone sideways to switch to a scientific calculator, and then enter numbers or formulas using the onscreen keys. The scientific calculator lets you perform more complex calculations with square root, logarithmic, and trigonometric functions.
  - Touch  to remove one digit at a time. Touch and hold  or touch **Clear** to delete the entire number.
  - Touch  for the result.

## Clock & Alarm

Get more from the Clock app than just the regular date and time. Use your phone as a world clock to see the date and time in cities across the globe. You can also set alarms or track your time using the stopwatch or timer.

### Set the Date and Time Manually

You can change your date and time.

1. Touch the clock on your Home screen panel, if available. Or touch  >  > **Clock**.
2. On the **WORLD CLOCK** tab, touch  > **Local time settings**.
3. Clear **Automatic date & time** and **Automatic time zone**, and then set the time zone, date, and time as required.

**Tip:** To display military time, choose the **Use 24-hour format** option.

### Set an Alarm

You can set up one or more alarms.

1. Touch the clock on your Home screen panel, if available. Or touch  >  > **Clock**.
2. On the **ALARMS** tab, select the check button of an alarm and then touch that alarm.
3. Under Set alarm, use the scroll wheels to set the alarm time.
4. If you want the alarm for multiple days, touch **Repeat**.
5. Touch **DONE**.
6. If you need to set more than three alarms, touch .

**Tip:** To turn off an alarm, clear the check box of that alarm.

## Check the Weather

Use the Weather app and widget to check the current weather and weather forecasts for the next few days. In addition to your current location, you can view weather forecasts for other cities around the globe.

1. Touch  >  > **Weather**. You'll see the weather from different cities, including where you are.
2. Touch a city to view weather information.
3. Swipe to the **HOURLY** and **FORECAST** tabs to view the forecasts in your selected location.

4. To check the weather in other cities, touch ▼, and then select the city you want.
5. To add more cities, touch + and then enter the location.

Your settings in the Weather app also control the weather information that is shown in the Clock and Calendar apps.

## Scribble

Make a page for your digital scrapbook or create interesting photos to share on your blog or social network. Use the Scribble app to get artistic and combine photos, text, and illustrations in a note.

With several templates to choose from, you can even create lists or track your budget. Have a greeting card ready and link it to your friend's birthday in Calendar to send in a few touches.

## Compose a Note

Create notes and add images, stickers and more to it.

1. Touch  >  > **Scribble**.
2. Choose a template when you're prompted. Or touch +.
3. Touch the area that says **Title text here** and enter the note title.
4. Use the editing tools to enter text, draw figures, record audio, and more.

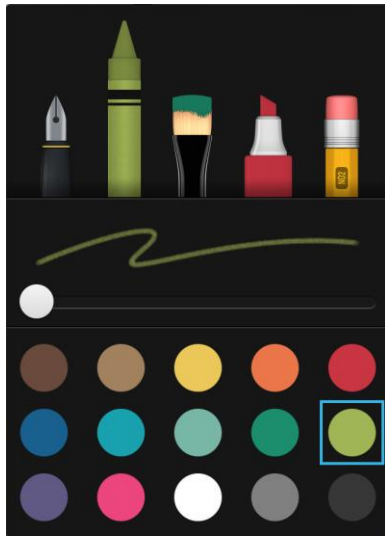


5. Insert images such as photos and webpage thumbnails.
6. Touch and hold an image to move, resize, or delete it. You can also use two fingers to rotate an image.
7. Touch  for other options, such as changing the template, linking the note to an event, and more.
8. Touch  to save the note.

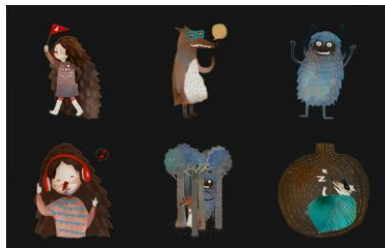
## Insert Images and Illustrations in a Note

1. Touch  >  > **Scribble**.
2. While composing a note:
  - Touch  to take a photo or touch  > **Insert picture** to select an image from Gallery.

- Touch  to draw or touch  to write text. You can change the pen characteristics.



- Touch  to insert a sticker.



- To insert a Web page thumbnail, touch  > **Web content**, and then in the Internet app, go to the Web page that you want to import. Touch  > **Share** > **Scribble**.

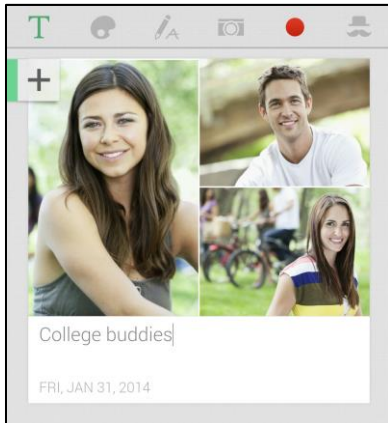
## Create a Note for a Photo Blog

Your photos tell the best story. Group photos into a note and easily share it on your photo blog or a social network. You can make your note more entertaining by including photo collages, stickers, and more.

**Note:** If you're inserting a collage, first group the photos in the same event or album in Gallery.

1. Touch  >  > **Scribble**.
2. Touch  and choose the photo blog template.

3. Touch  to capture a photo or select photos in Gallery and group them in a collage.



4. If inserting a collage, touch and hold the collage and then select a layout. You can also:
  - Touch and hold, and then drag around a photo within the frame to put the subject in the center of the frame.
  - Touch and hold, and then drag a photo over another to re-arrange them.
  - Slide two fingers apart to zoom in on a photo, or slide two fingers together to zoom out.
  - Touch another layout to change the current layout.
5. Touch the area above the date, and then use the editing tools to insert text and illustrations.
6. Touch the  on the left to add another page.
7. Touch  to save the note.

**Note:** To delete a page, touch and hold a collage or photo, and then touch **Delete**.

**Note:** If you share the note as an image, all the pages will be contained in one .JPG file.

## Group Notes Into a Notebook

Tidy up your notes by organizing them into notebooks.

1. Touch  >  > **Scribble**.
2. Do any of the following:
  - To group notes into a new notebook, touch  > **Group**.
  - To group notes into an existing notebook, touch  > **Move to**.

- To create a new notebook, swipe to the **NOTEBOOKS** tab, and touch **+**.

## *Publish and Share a Note*

Upload and share your creative work on the Web and get your own Scribble home page.

1. Touch  >  > **Scribble**.
2. Open a note and touch .
3. Touch **Share Article**.
4. Choose an account and type a description or tag your note.
5. Make sure that **Share your post** is selected.
6. Under **SHARE TO**, touch where you also want to share the link that will be created. You'll be prompted to complete the action in the apps you selected.
7. Touch **DONE**.

To view notes you've shared, swipe to the **SHARE** tab on the Scribble main screen. Or while viewing the Web link for any of your notes, touch **Home**, and then touch **Menu** to see or search your recent posts.

## *Online Storage*

Free up some of your phone's memory by storing photos, videos, documents, and more on your online storage.

### *Google Drive*

Store your photos, documents, and other files on Google Drive to access them on your phone, your computer, and your other mobile devices. On HTC One, just use your Google Account to sign in to your Google Drive storage.

You can then:

- Use Gallery to upload your captured photos to Google Drive.
- Share a link to your Google Drive files by email.
- View and edit Office documents that are stored in Google Drive. After creating new Office documents, you can also save them to Google Drive.
- View PDFs that are stored in Google Drive. You can also export Office documents as PDFs to Google Drive.
- Check your available Google Drive storage space in Settings.



- Back up HTC One to Google Drive, so you can easily restore your backup to another HTC phone next time.
- Use the Google Drive app to manage your online storage.

**Note:** Uploading files requires you have the Drive app installed on your phone. If this app is not preloaded, you can download and install it from Google Play.

**Note:** The Drive app is owned by Google and is not provided by or associated with HTC Corporation.

### Activate the Additional Google Drive Storage

Use up to 65GB of free Google Drive storage. In addition to the default storage that you get from Google Drive, HTC One features an additional 50GB of online storage free for two years. Sign in to your Google Account on your HTC phone (and not from your computer or other non-HTC phones) to claim this offer.

1. If you see the promotional Google Drive offer on HTC BlinkFeed, just touch the tile. Or open the Drive app. (If this app is not preloaded on your phone, you can download it from Google Play.)
2. On the screen that shows the additional storage offer, touch **Redeem**. The additional storage will then be added to your account.
3. Follow the onscreen prompts to learn the things you can do with Google Drive.

**Tip:** If you don't see the screen for redeeming the offer, touch  > **Product Tour** in the Drive app to access it.

**Tip:** View the offer details to know up to when you can redeem the offer.

**Note:** Additional terms and requirements may apply (including a subscription fee) after your two-year trial expires. For details, refer to the terms and conditions on the Google Drive support site [support.google.com](http://support.google.com).

### Check Your Google Drive Storage Space

In Settings, you can check your available Google Drive storage space.

**Note:** Before your Google Drive storage info appears in Settings, you need to access your Google Drive from an HTC app first, such as signing in to Google Drive from the Mail app when sharing a file link.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Storage**.
2. Under Online storage, you'll see your Google Drive storage space.

From time to time, check back on how much online storage space you still have before you upload more content.

## Upload Your Photos and Videos to Google Drive

Use Gallery to upload your photos and videos to Google Drive.

1. Touch  >  > **Gallery**.
2. Swipe to the **TIMELINE**, **ALBUMS**, or **LOCATIONS** tab.
3. Touch an album or event that contains the photos and videos you want to share.
4. Touch .
5. If you see the Zoe screen, touch **CLOSE** to close it.
6. From the selection menu, touch **Drive**.
7. Select the photos and videos you want to upload, and then touch **NEXT**.
8. Choose or create a folder in Google Drive.
9. Touch **OK** to upload.

## Share Links to Documents or Files in Google Drive

No more attaching large files to your email. Using the Mail app, you can easily share links to documents or other files in your Google Drive by email.

1. Touch  >  > **Mail**.
2. If you have several email accounts, switch to an email account you want to use.
3. Create a new email message and fill in your recipients, or reply to an email.
4. Touch .
5. Touch **Document**, and then choose whether to share PDFs or Office documents. Or touch **File** to choose any file type.
6. On the HTC files screen, touch **Drive**. If you don't see this screen, touch  first.
7. In your Google Drive storage, open the folder that contains the files that you want.
8. Select the files you want to share, and then touch **OK**. You'll then see the links to your selected files added to your email message.
9. Touch  to send your email.

Shared links are not accessible by your recipients automatically. Once your recipients receive the link, they can request access, and then you'll receive an email that notifies you to give them access. Or, before sharing, you can first use the Drive app to add the recipients you will share your Google Drive link with.

## Give People Access Through the Drive App

Using the Drive app, add the people you want to share your Google Drive link with. You can also set permissions, such as to let the recipients view, edit, or comment on your shared content.

1. Touch  >  > **Drive**.
2. Touch  next to a file or a folder, depending on which one you will share.
3. Touch .
4. Enter the first few characters of the name or email address. Matching results from your Google contacts will then be listed.
5. Select a contact name or email address, and then select the permissions. You can set permissions to allow recipients to:
  - View or edit a folder.
  - View, edit, or comment on a file.
6. Touch **Add**.
7. Add more people, and when done, touch  or press .

## Work with Documents that are Stored in Google Drive

With POLARIS® Office 5, view PDFs and edit Office documents that are stored in your Google Drive. You can also create Office documents in this app, save them to Google Drive, and even export them as PDFs to Google Drive.

1. Touch  >  > **POLARIS Office 5**.
2. Touch  to see your documents by file type. Documents listed under your Google Account are the files that are stored in your Google Drive storage. If necessary, touch  next to your account to see the file list.
3. Touch a PDF document to view it, or touch an Office document to edit it.
4. After making changes to an Office document, touch the icon on the top left to open a selection menu.
5. Touch **Save** or **Save as**.

**Tip:** If you want to export this document as a PDF, touch the icon on the top left, and then touch **PDF Export**.

## Save a Document From Your Phone to Google Drive

In POLARIS Office 5, you can save a PDF you're viewing or an Office document you created to your Google Drive storage.

1. Touch  >  > **POLARIS Office 5**.
2. Touch  to see your documents by file type.
3. Documents listed below the  icon are the files that are locally stored on your phone. If necessary, touch  to see the file list.
4. Open a PDF document, or create a new Office document.
5. To save the document to Google Drive, touch the icon on the top left, and then touch **Save as**.
6. Touch the Folder path box.
7. Touch , and then touch your Google Account to switch to your Google Drive storage.
8. Touch a folder where to save the document, and then touch .
9. Enter a file name, and then touch .

**Tip:** To find out more about using POLARIS Office 5, touch  > **Help**.

## Dropbox

If you're a Dropbox™ user, you can download and install the Dropbox app from Google Play to continue using your online storage.

You still get to enjoy Dropbox integration with HTC apps. You can:

- Access your Dropbox photos and videos from Gallery.
- Upload photos and videos to your Dropbox storage.
- Use the Mail app to share links to documents or files in your Dropbox storage by email.
- Restore a previous backup from your Dropbox storage to your phone.

Access your Dropbox account on the Dropbox website ([dropbox.com/account/bonus](https://dropbox.com/account/bonus)) to check details about any previous bonus storage space (such as the expiration). You can also refer to [dropbox.com/help/333](https://dropbox.com/help/333) for more information.

**Note:** Dropbox is a third-party app and is not provided by or associated with HTC Corporation.

## Check Your Dropbox Storage Space

You can check how much storage space you still have in your Dropbox before you upload more content.

**Note:** Before your Dropbox storage info appears in Settings, you need to access your Dropbox from an HTC app first (such as Gallery) and allow HTC Sense to access your Dropbox.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Storage**.
2. Under Online storage, you'll see your available Dropbox storage.

## Unlink Your Phone From Dropbox

You can remotely unlink your phone from your Dropbox, if you lost your phone or you no longer need to use Dropbox.

1. On your computer's Web browser, go to the Dropbox website ([dropbox.com](https://dropbox.com)) and sign in.
2. On the right-hand corner of any page on the website, click **Account**. (Or click your account name, and then click **Settings**.)
3. Click the **Security** tab.
4. Under My devices, click **Unlink** to the right of your Android device.
5. Click **Unlink phone**.

## Tasks

Use the Tasks application to organize and track to do and task lists. You can save tasks on your phone or sync them with your Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync and Google Accounts. You can also see your tasks in Calendar.

### Create a Task

Create detailed tasks to help organize your day.

1. Touch  >  > **Tasks**.
2. To select the Task account where you want to create the task, touch .
3. Touch  and then enter the task details.

**Tip:** Tasks created under My tasks can be linked to a contact (touch  ) or to a location (touch  )

4. Touch **SAVE**.

## Manage Tasks

Organize your tasks by marking those you've completed, sort tasks, edit tasks and more.

1. Touch  >  > **Tasks**.
2. Go to the list that contains the task.
3. In the list of tasks, you can:
  - **Mark a task complete.** Touch the check button next to the task. To view completed tasks, touch  > **View completed**.
  - **Sort tasks.** Touch  > **Sort**. Select how you want to sort the tasks.
  - **Edit a task.** Touch the task that you want to edit, and then touch **EDIT**. Edit the task details, and then touch **SAVE**.
  - **Delete a task.** Touch and hold the task that you want to delete, and then touch **Delete**.
  - **Postpone a task.** Touch and hold an overdue task, and then touch **Postpone**. Choose how long you want to postpone the task.
  - **Move a task to another list.** You can only move the task to another list that is under the same account. Touch and hold the task that you want to move, and then touch **Move to**. Touch the task list where you want the task to appear.

## Manage Task Lists

You can create, edit, and rename your task lists.

1. Touch  >  > **Tasks**.
2. Touch  > **Manage lists**.
3. From here, you can:
  - **Show tasks.** To show all tasks under a list, touch a task list.
  - **Create a list.** Touch , and then choose an account for the list. Lists can't be created for Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync accounts.
  - **Rename a list.** Touch  at the right of a list, and then touch **Rename**. Enter a new name for the list, and then touch **OK**.
  - **Delete a list.** Touch  at the right of a list, and then touch **Delete**. Touch **OK**.

**Note:** You cannot delete a main list.

## Voice Recorder

Use Voice Recorder to capture information during lectures, interviews, or even to create your own audio log.

### Record Your Voice

Start creating voice memos on your phone.

1. Touch  >  > **Voice Recorder**.
2. Hold the microphone near the sound source.
3. Touch  to start recording a voice clip.

**Note:** Voice Recorder can run in the background while you do other things on your phone, except when you open other applications that also use audio functions.

4. Touch  to stop recording.
5. To play back the voice clip, touch .

**Tip:** To see your recorded voice clips, touch . Touch and hold a voice clip to see options for sharing, setting it as a ringtone, and more.

## HTC Sync Manager

With HTC Sync Manager, enjoy the same media whether you're at your computer or on the move. Use it also to store your same contacts, important documents, and other data on both your phone and your computer.

HTC Sync Manager supports a computer running a Windows or Mac OS operating system.

Here are the things you can do with HTC Sync Manager.

- **View and manage media on your computer**
  - Browse and manage music, photos, and videos that are on your computer and your phone.
  - Import iTunes® and Windows Media® Player playlists from your computer to HTC Sync Manager.
  - Play music, videos, and playlists using the built-in player.
- **Transfer content**
  - Transfer iPhone photos, text messages, contacts, and more to your HTC phone. You can also find and install the same apps that you were using on your iPhone.

- Import all music, photos, and videos from your HTC phone to your computer.
- Copy selected music, photos, or videos from your computer to your phone.
- Import documents from your computer to your phone.
- **Back up and restore.** Back up your HTC phone to your computer so you can easily restore your backup to the same phone or to another phone.
- **Sync playlists and data.** Sync music playlists and data such as contacts, calendar, and web bookmarks between your phone and your computer.

## *Install HTC Sync Manager on a Windows Computer*

Follow the steps below to install HTC Sync Manager on your computer.

**Important:** You need to have administrator rights if you're installing HTC Sync Manager on Windows Vista® or later versions.

**Important:** If you have problem with installing HTC Sync Manager, close all your running programs and reinstall. If the problem persists, temporarily disable your anti-virus program and try installing again.

1. Download the HTC Sync Manager installer from [htc.com/hsm](http://htc.com/hsm).
2. Launch the installer and follow the onscreen instructions.
3. Connect your phone to your computer using the supplied USB cable. HTC Sync Manager opens.

**Important:** If you disabled your anti-virus program, make sure to turn it back on after installing HTC Sync Manager.

## *Transfer iPhone Content to Your HTC Phone*

With HTC Sync Manager, easily transfer iPhone content such as contacts, messages, wallpaper, camera photos, and more to your HTC phone. HTC Sync Manager also allows your phone to find and install the same apps that you were using on your iPhone.

**Note:** You need to use iTunes 9.0 or later to back up your iPhone content first to your computer.

1. Connect your iPhone and your HTC phone to your computer.
2. In HTC Sync Manager, click **Home > Transfer & Backup**.
3. Click the **Get Started** button.
4. If you haven't used iTunes to back up your iPhone content to your computer, please do so before proceeding.
5. Select your iPhone backup file, and then click **OK**.



6. Select the types of content you want to transfer to your HTC phone.

You can choose whether to replace the content on your HTC phone with the iPhone content.

7. Click **Start**. Wait for HTC Sync Manager to finish transferring content.
8. When done, slide open the Notifications panel on your HTC phone, and then touch .
9. Choose which apps you were using on iPhone you want to find in Google Play and download to your HTC phone.

## Get Help

To find out more about using HTC Sync Manager, download the user guide PDF from the HTC support site ([htc.com/hsm](http://htc.com/hsm)). Or open the Help that comes with the software.

**Tip:** On Windows, click  in HTC Sync Manager, and then click **Help**.

## Bluetooth and NFC

Bluetooth is a short-range communications technology that allows you to connect wirelessly to a number of Bluetooth devices, such as headsets and hands-free car kits, and Bluetooth-enabled handhelds, computers, printers, and wireless phones. The Bluetooth communication range is usually approximately 30 feet.

Your phone is also equipped with near field communication (NFC) technology that allows you to send and receive information to and from an NFC-enabled device. Just place the phone's back panel closer to the other device to start exchanging information.

## Connect a Bluetooth Headset or Car Kit

You can listen to music over a Bluetooth stereo headset, or have hands-free conversations using a compatible Bluetooth headset or car kit.

**Important:** For you to listen to music with your headset, the headset must support the A2DP Bluetooth profile.

**Note:** Before you connect your headset, make it discoverable so your phone can find it. Refer to your headset manual for details.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.
2. Touch the **BLUETOOTH** tile to turn Bluetooth on.
3. Touch  below the **BLUETOOTH** tile to open the Bluetooth screen.
4. If you don't see your headset listed, touch **Scan for devices** to refresh the list.

5. When you see the name of your headset in the Available Devices section, touch the name. Your phone pairs with the headset and the headset connection status is displayed in the Paired Devices section.

**Note:** If automatic pairing fails, enter the passcode supplied with your headset.

The pairing and connection status is displayed below the hands-free headset or car kit name in the Bluetooth phones section. When the Bluetooth headset or car kit is connected to your phone, the Bluetooth connected icon  is displayed in the status bar.

## *Reconnect a Headset or Car Kit*

Normally, you can easily reconnect your headset by switching on Bluetooth on your phone, and then turning on the headset. However, you might have to connect manually if your headset has been used with another Bluetooth device.

**Important:** Make sure that the headset is discoverable. Refer to the headset manual for details.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.
2. Touch the **BLUETOOTH** tile to turn Bluetooth on.
3. Touch  below the **BLUETOOTH** tile to open the Bluetooth screen.
4. Touch the headset's name in the Paired Devices section.
5. If prompted to enter a passcode, try **0000** or **1234**, or consult the headset/car kit documentation to find the passcode.

If you still cannot reconnect to the headset or car kit, follow the instructions in [Disconnect From a Bluetooth Device](#), and then follow the steps in [Connect a Bluetooth Headset or Car Kit](#).

## *Disconnect From a Bluetooth Device*

If you do not need to use Bluetooth at any given point, you can disconnect and unpair your phone from a Bluetooth device.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.
2. Touch the **BLUETOOTH** tile to turn Bluetooth on.
3. Touch  below the **BLUETOOTH** tile to open the Bluetooth screen.
4. In the Paired Devices section, touch  next to the device to unpair.
5. Touch **Unpair**.

**Note:** Touch the name of the device to reconnect it.

## Send Information Using Bluetooth

You can use Bluetooth to transfer information between your phone and another Bluetooth-enabled device such as a phone or notebook computer. The first time you transfer information between your phone and another phone, you need to enter or confirm a security passcode. After that, your phone and the other phone are paired, and you will not need to exchange passcodes to transfer information in the future.

**Important:** Before you begin, set the receiving phone to discoverable mode. You may also need to set it to "Receive Beams" or "Receive Files." Refer to the phone's documentation for instructions on receiving information over Bluetooth.

You can send the following types of information, depending on the phone you are sending to:

1. On your phone, open the application that contains the information or file you want to send.
2. Follow the steps for the type of item you want to send:

|                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Contact                       | <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. In the People application, touch a contact to view the contact's details.</li><li>2. Touch , and then touch <b>Send contact</b>.</li><li>3. Touch <b>Send contact via</b>, and then touch <b>Bluetooth</b>.</li><li>4. Touch <b>SEND</b>.</li></ol> |
| Calendar appointment or event | In Day, Agenda, or Week view, touch and hold the event, and then touch <b>Share via &gt; Bluetooth</b> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Photos or videos              | <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. In Gallery, select a photo and view it in full screen.</li><li>2. Touch the photo and touch  &gt; <b>More &gt; Bluetooth</b>.</li></ol>                                                                                                         |
| Captured photo or video       | After capturing, on the Camera preview screen, touch  > <b>More &gt; Bluetooth</b> . (Note that you must have first set a review duration in Camera settings.)                                                                                                                           |
| Music track                   | Browse to the music track you want to share, and then touch  > <b>Share &gt; Share file &gt; Bluetooth</b> .                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Voice recording               | On the main Voice Recorder screen, touch  > <b>Share &gt; Bluetooth</b> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Browser                       | On a webpage you want to share, touch  > <b>Share &gt; More &gt; Bluetooth</b> .                                                                                                                                                                                                         |

3. Turn Bluetooth on and pair with the receiving phone, if you're asked to do so.
4. On the receiving device, accept the file.

## *Where Sent Information is Saved*

When you send information from your phone using Bluetooth, the location where it's saved depends on the type of information and the receiving device.

If you send a calendar event or contact, it is normally added directly to the corresponding application on the receiving phone. For example, if you send a calendar event to a compatible phone, the event is shown in that phone's calendar application.

If you send another file type to a Windows computer, it is normally saved in the Bluetooth Exchange folder within your personal document folders.

- On Windows XP, the path may be:  
C:\Documents and Settings\[your username]\My Documents\Bluetooth Exchange
- On Windows Vista, the path may be:  
C:\Users\[your username]\Documents
- On Windows 7, the path may be:  
C:\Users\[your username]\My Documents\Bluetooth Exchange Folder
- On Windows 8, the path may be:  
C:\Users\[your username]\Documents

If you send a file to another device, the saved location may depend on the file type. For example, if you send an image file to another wireless phone, it may be saved in a folder named "Images."

## *Receive Files Using Bluetooth*

Your phone lets you receive various files with Bluetooth, including photos, music tracks, contact info, calendar events, and documents such as PDFs.

**Important:** Refer to the other device's documentation for instructions on sending information over Bluetooth.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.
2. Touch the **BLUETOOTH** tile to turn Bluetooth on.
3. Touch ■■■ below the **BLUETOOTH** tile to open the Bluetooth screen.
4. Touch your phone's Bluetooth name near the top of the screen to make your phone visible to nearby Bluetooth devices.
5. On the sending device, send one or more files to your phone.

6. If asked, accept the pairing request on your phone and on the sending device. You may also be prompted to enter the same passcode or confirm the auto-generated passcode on both devices.

You'll then get a Bluetooth authorization request.

7. Touch **PAIR**.
8. When your phone receives a file transfer request notification, slide the Notifications panel down, touch the incoming file notification, and then touch **ACCEPT**.
9. When a file is transferred, a download notification is displayed. Slide the Notifications panel down, and then touch the relevant notification to view the file.

**Tip:** You can also touch  > **Show received files** to view files received via Bluetooth.

When you open a received file, what happens next depends on the file type:

- Media files and documents are usually opened directly in a compatible application. For example, if you open a music track, it starts playing in the Music app.
- For a vCalendar file, select the calendar where you want to save the event, and then touch Import. The vCalendar is added to your Calendar events. (For more information, see [Calendar](#).)
- For a vCard contact file, you can choose to import one, several, or all of those contacts to your contacts list.

## *Use Bluetooth FTP Server*

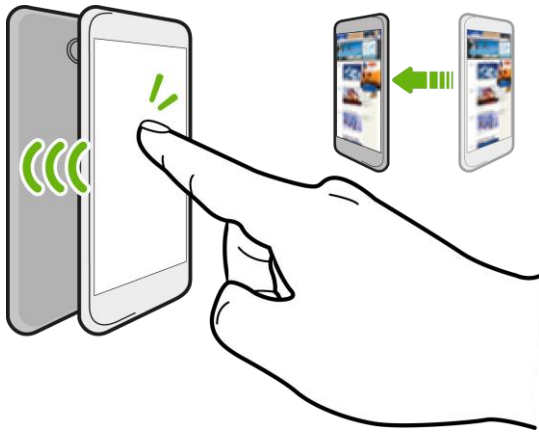
Bluetooth FTP Server allows other devices with Bluetooth FTP profiles to view, access, copy, and delete files from your phone storage.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.
2. Touch the **BLUETOOTH** tile to turn Bluetooth on.
3. Touch  below the **BLUETOOTH** tile to open the Bluetooth screen.
4. Touch  > **Advanced**, and then select the **FTP Server** option.
5. Pair your phone with the other Bluetooth device that you will allow access to your phone's storage. For more information about Bluetooth pairing, see [Connect a Bluetooth Headset or Car Kit](#).
6. When the other device attempts to access your phone's storage, a Bluetooth Authorization Request appears on the screen. Touch **ACCEPT**.

The contents of your phone's storage appear on the other device's screen.

## Share Content with NFC

With built-in NFC (near field communication) on your phone, you can share content to someone's mobile phone in an instant. Beam a webpage you're viewing, contact information, and more by just holding your phone and the other phone back to back.



**Note:** You can also use NFC for contactless payment. Contact Sprint to find out about the availability of NFC payment services.

### Turn NFC On

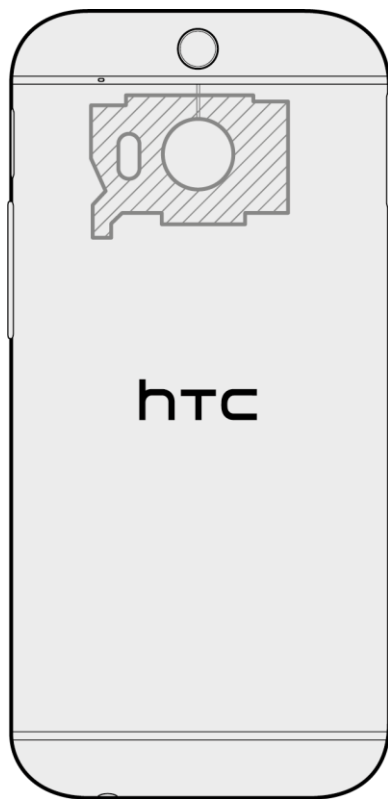
1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch .
2. Under Wireless & Networks, touch **More**.
3. Touch the **NFC ON/OFF** switch to turn it on and off.

### Beam Content

**Note:** Make sure that both devices are unlocked and have NFC turned on. If the other device has an Android Beam™ option, make sure it is also turned on.

1. While viewing the content that you want to share, hold your phone and the other phone back to back.

Make sure that the NFC area (shaded part) of your phone and the other phone's NFC area are close to one another. Experiment by slightly moving the phones until a connection is made.



2. Touch the screen.

The shared content appears on the other screen. For some items that you've shared (such as contact information), additional instructions on how to save the item will appear on the receiving device.

## *microSD Card*

You can install a microSD card (sold separately) into your phone so you can store more images, videos, music, documents, and voice data.

**Important:** Make sure your battery is fully charged before using the microSD card. Your data may become damaged or unusable if the battery runs out while using the microSD card.

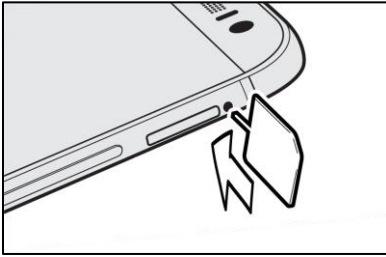
**Important:** You can easily damage the microSD card by improper operation. Please be careful when inserting, removing, or handling the microSD card.

## *Insert the microSD Card*

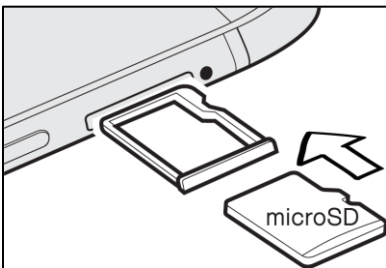
Here are the steps for inserting the microSD card.

1. Turn off the phone.
2. Hold the phone face up.

3. Fully insert the tray eject pin (included in the box) into the small hole next to the microSD card tray slot until the tray ejects.



4. Pull the microSD card tray out, and place the microSD card into the tray.

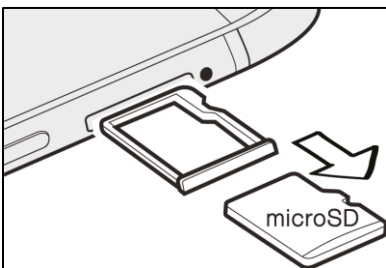


5. Insert the microSD card tray back into the slot.
6. Turn on the phone.

## ***Remove the microSD Card***

Here are the steps for removing the microSD card.

1. Turn off the phone.
2. Hold the phone face up.
3. Fully insert the tray eject pin (included in the box) into the small hole next to the microSD card tray slot until the tray ejects.
4. Gently pull the microSD card out of the slot.



5. Replace the microSD card and tray.



## Check the microSD Card Memory

Determine how much space you have left on your microSD card by checking its memory.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Storage**.
2. Check the total and available memory space under the SD card section.

## Erase the microSD Card

Erasing the microSD card removes all files stored on it.

**Note:** When you erase the microSD card, the files CANNOT be retrieved. To help prevent the loss of important data, please check the contents before you erase the card.

**Important:** Erasing the microSD card may not permanently erase all data from the card, including personal information.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Storage**.
2. Under SD card, touch **Unmount SD card**, and then touch **OK**.
3. Touch **Erase SD card** > **ERASE SD CARD**.

**Note:** If you've set up a screen lock, you'll be asked to enter the screen lock before you can proceed.

4. Touch **Erase everything**.

## Unmount the microSD Card

When you need to remove the microSD card while the phone is on, you must first unmount the microSD card. This prevents corrupting the data stored on it or damaging the microSD card. Close all running applications on your phone and save any data before you unmount the microSD card.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Storage**.
2. Under SD card, touch **Unmount SD card**, and then touch **OK**.
3. Remove the microSD card. See [Remove the microSD Card](#).

## Update Your Phone

From time to time, updates may become available for your phone. You can download and apply updates through the **Settings** > **System updates** menu.

## Prepare for a Phone Update

You can update your phone's software using the System updates settings. Updating your phone firmware will erase all user data from your phone. You must back up all critical information before updating your phone firmware.

**Note:** Updating your phone firmware may not permanently erase all data from your phone, including personal information.

### Back Up All Data Prior to Update

To back up your Gmail information:

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Accounts & sync**.
2. Do any of the following:
  - Turn on the **Auto-sync** option. When Auto-sync is on, Gmail email, Calendar, and Contacts automatically synchronize whenever a change is made.
  - Touch **Google**, select the Google Account you want to back up, and then select the items you want to synchronize.

To back up your Exchange ActiveSync information:

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Accounts & sync**.
2. Touch **Exchange ActiveSync**, select the account you want to synchronize, and then touch  > **Sync now**.

To back up stored text messages:

- See [Back Up and Restore Your Text Messages](#).

To back up your Google applications:

Applications you've purchased from Google Play are reloaded remotely and can be re-installed after the update is applied. After the update, make sure that you add your Google Account on the phone.

1. Touch  >  > **Play Store**.
2. Touch  to open the slideout menu.
3. Touch **My apps**, swipe to the **ALL** tab, and then touch the app you want to restore.
4. Follow the onscreen instructions.

## Update the Operating System

This option allows you to update the phone's operating system (OS) via an over-the-air connection.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **System updates**.
2. Touch **HTC software update** > **CHECK NOW**.

**Note:** If you want to conserve data usage, you can select the **Update over Wi-Fi only** option before you touch **Check now**.

3. Follow onscreen instructions to download and install any available updates.

## Update Your Profile

This option allows you to automatically update your online user profile information. If you choose to change your user name and select a new one online, you must then update the user name on your phone.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **System updates**.
2. Touch **Update profile** and follow onscreen instructions.

**Note:** If your data services or account syncing ever seems to go out unexpectedly, use this feature to reconnect with the network.

## Update Your PRL

This option allows you to automatically download and update the PRL (preferred roaming list).

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **System updates**.
2. Touch **Update PRL** and follow onscreen instructions.

# Sprint Worldwide Wireless Service

---

With your phone and global roaming service from Sprint Worldwide<sup>SM</sup> Wireless Service, you can make phone calls and use wireless data services around the globe on compatible CDMA and GSM/UMTS networks. For a country-specific travel guide, select your phone and destination from [sprint.com/traveltips](http://sprint.com/traveltips).

## Activate Sprint Worldwide Service on Your Account

Before using your phone in global roaming mode, you must activate Sprint Worldwide service.

To activate Sprint Worldwide service, you can either:

- Chat with or email an international support rep by visiting [sprint.com/swwsupport](http://sprint.com/swwsupport).
- Call Sprint Worldwide Customer support at **1-888-226-7212**.

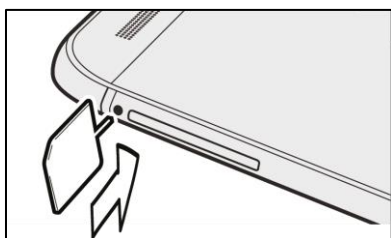
## Your Phone's SIM Card for International GSM Roaming

Your phone comes with a preinstalled Nano SIM (Subscriber Identity Module) card to support roaming on compatible GSM networks.

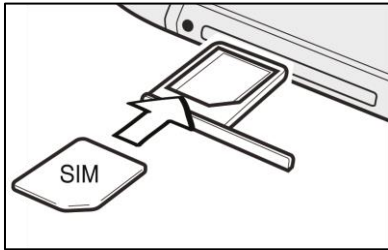
**Note:** Your SIM card should be preinstalled. If you need to reinstall your SIM card, follow the instructions below.

**Note:** The SIM included contains information specific to your phone and should be retained with the phone for use on GSM networks.

1. Turn off the phone.
2. Hold the phone face up.
3. Fully insert the tray eject pin (included in the box) into the small hole next to the Nano SIM card tray slot until the tray ejects.



4. Pull the tray out, and place the Nano SIM card into the tray.



5. Insert the tray back into the slot.
6. Turn on the phone.

## *Enable Global Roaming Mode*

Your phone is designed to enter global roaming mode automatically when you activate your Sprint Worldwide service, meaning that it should automatically connect to an appropriate CDMA/LTE network or GSM/UMTS network when you travel. You may set global roaming options through the settings menu. You may also need to set your network mode options through the settings menu.

To enable your phone for international roaming:

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **MOBILE DATA** > **Roaming** > **Automatic**.
2. From Mobile network settings, touch the checkbox for **International Voice**.
3. With International Voice selected, touch the checkbox for **International Data**.

To set your network mode options manually:

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **MOBILE DATA** > **Network mode**.
  - To allow connections to CDMA or LTE networks only, touch **CDMA Only** or **LTE/CDMA**.
  - To allow connections to GSM or UMTS networks only, touch **GSM/UMTS Only**.
  - To allow connections to available CDMA/LTE or GSM/UMTS networks, touch **Automatic**. This is the recommended setting for international use.

## *Make and Receive Worldwide Calls*

When traveling on international networks, you can place and answer calls as you would on the Sprint Network (see [Make Phone Calls](#) and [Receive Phone Calls](#)), although some additional instructions may be required to place a call. Some features and services are not available in all

countries. For more information on services that are available while roaming, visit [sprint.com/sww](http://sprint.com/sww).

## Make Calls Using Plus (+) Code Dialing

Placing calls from one country to another country is simple with the Plus (+) Code Dialing feature. When placing international calls, you can use Plus Code Dialing to enter the appropriate international access code for your location (for example, 011 for international calls placed from the United States).

**Note:** Plus Code Dialing is only available when roaming internationally on GSM networks and on certain CDMA networks in the United States, Canada, and the Carribbean.

**Note:** International access codes and dialing information are available online at [sprint.com/sww](http://sprint.com/sww).

For more information on Plus Code Dialing, see [Make International Calls](#).

## *Sprint International Voicemail Service*

Your Sprint voicemail will follow you as you travel. All of your unanswered calls will be forwarded to your Sprint voicemail. You will need to be sure your voicemail box is already set up and that you know your voicemail password.

**Note:** Sprint voicemail may not be available on all networks; check [sprint.com/sww](http://sprint.com/sww) for service information.

## *Set Up Your Voicemail Access Number for International Use*

To simplify accessing your Sprint Voicemail while traveling, you can set up your voicemail access number as an entry in your contacts list. This will make it faster and easier to access your messages while roaming internationally.

1. Touch  >  > **People**.
2. Touch .
3. Touch the Name field, and then enter **Voicemail**.
4. Add (+1), your area code, and your wireless phone number.
5. Touch **SAVE**.

## *Access Your Voicemail Internationally*

You will need to call your voicemail number to access your voicemail while roaming internationally.

## New Message Indicators

Your voicemail message indicators may be displayed differently when roaming internationally.

- A "Message Waiting" indicator icon or a text message is displayed when a voicemail message is received.
- You may see "Missed Call" on your screen prior to receiving a message notification.
- You must call voicemail in order to retrieve messages. Follow the instructions on [Set Up Your Voicemail Access Number for International Use](#) to store your voicemail number for easy access.

## Retrieve Voicemail Messages

The voicemail retrieval process while traveling is the same as on the Sprint Network; however, you will be required to enter your voicemail password.

To retrieve your voicemail messages:

1. Touch  >  > **People**.
2. Touch your Voicemail entry, and then touch **CALL**.
3. When your voicemail answers, touch , enter the password, and touch  to access your voicemail.

## International Voicemail Troubleshooting

There are a few tips to keep in mind when using Sprint voicemail while traveling.

- Some carriers may not support voicemail indicators. It may be necessary to call your voicemail to see if you have any new messages.
- If you hear the message "Please enter the number of the subscriber you wish to call," enter your 10-digit wireless phone number.

## International Data Roaming

Sprint Worldwide Wireless Service can also keep you connected via email and Web browsing when traveling in countries in which Sprint offers data service. Data services are available on both CDMA and GSM/UMTS networks; check [sprint.com/traveltips](http://sprint.com/traveltips) and [sprint.com/sww](http://sprint.com/sww) to determine the services available where you are traveling.

**Note:** Prior to using your Sprint Worldwide GSM/UMTS Data Services, you must establish and utilize your CDMA data services domestically on the Sprint Network.

## Get Started With Sprint Worldwide Data Services

To use Sprint Worldwide Data Services, you will need to have these services activated on your account.

- To activate, call Sprint Worldwide Customer Support at **1-888-226-7212**. Representatives are available 24 hours a day, 7 days a week to assist you.

## Access Email and Data Services on GSM/UMTS Networks

To access your email and browse the Web when traveling, you may need to manually select the carrier that provides Sprint service in your location. You can find a list of carriers for each country where GSM data service is offered at [sprint.com/sww](http://sprint.com/sww). Then, follow the instructions below to select the appropriate carrier network on your phone.

To select a GSM data service carrier for a specific country:

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **MOBILE DATA**.
2. Make sure the check boxes are selected for **International Data** and **Allow GSM Data**.
3. Touch **Available GSM networks** > **Search networks**.
4. Select a specific operator.

## Access Email and Data Services Internationally on CDMA Networks

If data service is available on an international CDMA network, then you only need to set the phone to CDMA; you will not need to select the specific carrier. Selecting a specific carrier is only necessary for providers on the GSM network. If your phone has automatically selected a GSM network while traveling, then you will need to set the phone to CDMA to access CDMA data services. (See [Enable Global Roaming Mode](#).) Visit [sprint.com/sww](http://sprint.com/sww) for a list of services available in each country.

## International Roaming Status Messages

You may receive status messages under certain conditions. Before contacting Sprint Worldwide Customer Support, note the message, numeric code, and the conditions under which it appeared. The following table lists and describes the status messages.

| Status Messages       | Message Description                                                                            |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Number Not in Service | The number that you entered is not valid.                                                      |
| User Not Available    | The phone that you called is either busy, out-of-range, or turned off. Please try again later. |
| User Not Authorized   | The phone that you called is either busy, out-of-range, or turned off. Please try again later. |
| Please Try Later      | This service is temporarily not available. Please try again later.                             |
| Service Restricted    | Service may not be activated properly. Please                                                  |



|                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                        | contact Sprint Customer Service to report the issue for resolution.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>Service Not Available</b>           | This feature is not available on the current network.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Emergency Calls Only</b>            | Either the service is not activated properly or the current network is available for emergency calling only. Adjust your network settings to check for other available networks. If service is still not available after adjusting the settings, contact Sprint Customer Service to report the issue for resolution.                                                    |
| <b>System Busy. Try Later</b>          | The system is experiencing heavy traffic. Please try again later.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>Service Conflict</b>                | This service cannot be enabled because an incompatible service has already been turned on.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>Please Try Again</b>                | An error occurred. Note the error code and try again.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Self Check Error</b>                | A fault was detected with your phone. If this error recurs, note the error and contact Sprint Customer Service.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>Self Check Fail</b>                 | An operational fault was detected with your phone. Note the numeric code, turn your phone off, and contact Sprint Customer Service.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>Wrong PIN</b>                       | You have entered an incorrect SIM PIN number. You have only three attempts to enter your PIN. After a third unsuccessful attempt, your phone will be locked and you will have to call Sprint Customer Service to have it unlocked. Sprint sets the default to PIN off; if you elect to enable the PIN then you will need to contact Sprint for the default PIN and PUK. |
| <b>PIN Blocked. Call Your Provider</b> | An incorrect SIM PIN was entered three consecutive times. You will be unable to send                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |

|                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                       | or receive calls on your phone. Contact Sprint Customer Service to obtain the PIN Unblocked Key (PUK) code. Sprint sets the default to PIN off; if you elect to enable the PIN then you will need to contact Sprint for the default PIN and PUK. |
| <b>Insert SIM</b>     | Your SIM Card is not being detected. Please check to ensure that you have inserted the SIM Card.                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Check SIM Card</b> | Please check your SIM card to make sure it is properly inserted.                                                                                                                                                                                 |

## *Contact Sprint for Assistance with International Service*

If you experience any issues with voice or data services while outside of the United States, Sprint offers customer support 24 hours a day. In the event that you do experience an issue, try the following actions:

- First try powering your phone off and then back on; this will force your phone to reregister with the network.
- Try manually selecting another network. Information for selecting networks can be found in the phone guide.

If neither of these actions resolves your issue, you will need to contact customer service (see below). When calling to report an issue, the following information will be beneficial in trying to resolve your issue as quickly as possible:

- Your wireless phone number.
- The city and country you are traveling in.
- Any error message that displays on your phone or that you heard when trying to place a call.
- If the issue is with data, were you able to place voice calls?
- If the issue is with voice service, were you able to access data?

**Please call the numbers below if you need assistance:**

While in the United States: Call **1-888-226-7212**.

While traveling outside the United States:

- In GSM mode: touch **0** and then dial **1-817-698-4199**.
- In CDMA mode: enter the country code and then dial **1-817-698-4199**.

There is no charge for this call from your wireless phone.

**From a landline phone when outside the United States:**

Sprint Worldwide Customer Support can be reached from a landline phone at **1-817-698-4199**. Access or connection fees may apply. The toll free numbers below can also be used to contact Sprint Worldwide Customer Support in the following countries:

| Country                                                     | From Landline Phone |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| Caribbean (Anguila, Barbados, Cayman Islands, and Dominica) | 1-888-226-7212      |
| France                                                      | 0800-903200         |
| Germany                                                     | 0800-180-0951       |
| Italy                                                       | 800-787-986         |
| Mexico                                                      | 001-877-294-9003    |
| Trinidad and Tobago                                         | 1-800-201-7545      |
| United Kingdom                                              | 0808-234-6616       |

**Note:** This toll free service is available on ordinary landline phones and some public pay phones. This service does not cover any hotel access charges.

# Settings

---

The following topics provide an overview of items you can change using your phone's Settings menus.

## Wireless & Networks Settings

This group of settings lets you control your phone's wireless network settings (3G and 4G LTE), Wi-Fi settings, Bluetooth, and more.

### Airplane Mode

When you enable Airplane (Flight) mode, all wireless radios on your phone are turned off, including the call function, data services, Bluetooth, and Wi-Fi. You can still use many of your phone's features, such as Gallery, Camera, and Music, when you are on an airplane or in any other area where making or receiving calls or data is prohibited.

When you disable Airplane mode, the call function is turned back on and the previous state of Bluetooth and Wi-Fi is restored.

**Note:** You can manually turn Bluetooth and Wi-Fi back on after enabling Airplane mode.

**Note:** If USB tethering is turned on, enabling Airplane mode turns it off. You need to manually turn USB tethering on after you disable Airplane mode.

- Do any of the following to turn Airplane mode on or off:
  - Press and hold the **Power** button, and then touch **Airplane mode**.
  - With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings. Touch the **AIRPLANE MODE** tile to turn airplane mode on or off.

When enabled, the Airplane mode icon  is displayed in the status bar.

### Wi-Fi Settings

Your phone lets you take advantage of Wi-Fi hotspots for high-speed data access using available computer networks. For details on your phone's Wi-Fi features and settings, see [Wi-Fi](#).

### Bluetooth Settings

Your phone's Bluetooth capabilities let you use wireless headsets, send and receive pictures and files, and more. For details on your phone's Bluetooth settings, see [Bluetooth and NFC](#).

## Mobile Data Settings

This menu lets you turn your data connection on or off, and more. For details on mobile networks, see [Data Services General Information – Sprint Spark LTE and 3G Networks](#) and [Sprint Worldwide Wireless Service](#).

## Media Output Settings

Configure settings for the optional HTC Media Link HD connection to an HDTV. See [About HTC Media Link HD](#).

## More Wireless & Network Settings

Additional options that let you view your data usage and set up VPN, and NFC.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.
2. Touch  and then under Wireless & networks, touch **More** and select an option.
  - **Data usage:** Check how much data usage have you been using or check the data usage of certain apps. See [Manage Your Data Usage](#).
  - **Default SMS app:** Set the default SMS app to use on your phone.
  - **VPN:** Configure your Virtual Private Network (VPN) settings so you can connect to your company's intranet sites. See [Virtual Private Networks \(VPN\)](#).
  - **Mobile network sharing:** Use these settings to turn Mobile Hotspot on or off, or enable USB tethering. See [Mobile Hotspot](#) or [Share Internet Connection via USB Tethering](#).
  - **HTC Mini+:** Configure and manage your phone's connection with the HTC Mini+ (sold separately).
  - **NFC:** Share information wirelessly with other NFC-enabled device. See [Share Content with NFC](#).

## Personalize Settings

Use the Personalize menu to customize your phone's display, add items to the Home screen, or change the sound settings.

## Customize the Home and Lock Screen Settings

Using the phone's Personalize home screen menus, you can set the following settings.

- Customize the wallpaper of your Home screen by choosing from a collection of wallpapers or from your own photos. See [Customize the Home Screen](#).
- Add apps and widgets to the Widget panels. See [Work with Widgets and App Shortcuts](#).

- Manage additional home screen pages.
- Change the lock screen wallpaper.
- Change the phone's theme.

## Ringtone

Use the Ringtone settings menu to select a phone ringtone or to make your own music as ringtone.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.
2. Touch  > **Personalize** > **Ringtone**.
3. Do any of the following:
  - Select a ringtone from the list and touch **APPLY**.
  - Add a ringtone from your music. Touch , touch a music track, touch **OK**, and then touch **APPLY**.

**Note:** To learn how to trim an MP3 song and save it as a ringtone, see [Set a Song as a Ringtone](#).

## Notification Sound

The Notification sound menu lets you select your phone's notification sound.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.
2. Touch  > **Personalize** > **Notification sound**.
3. Select a sound and touch **APPLY**.

## Alarm

Touch this option to select an alarm sound. For details on how to set an alarm, see [Set an Alarm](#).

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.
2. Touch  > **Personalize** > **Alarm**.
3. Select a sound and touch **APPLY**.

## Accounts & Sync

The Accounts & sync settings menu lets you add and manage all your email, social networking, online storage, and HTC account.

## *Add Your Social Networks, Email Accounts, and More*

Add your favorite social networks, email accounts, and online storages on your phone so you are connected anywhere you go.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.
2. Touch  > **Accounts & sync**.
3. Touch .
4. Touch an account type. You can set up these accounts on your phone: Exchange ActiveSync, Facebook, Google, HTC Account, Instagram for HTC Sense, LinkedIn for HTC Sense, Mail, Outlook.com, Scribble, and Twitter.
5. Enter your account information and follow screen instructions to proceed.  
Depending on the account type, you may need to enter an email address or user address, password, domain name, or other information. For Exchange ActiveSync accounts, contact your server administrator to determine what information you will need.

## *Add an Exchange ActiveSync Account*

You can use this menu to add an Exchange ActiveSync account on your phone so you can send and receive email from your corporate email address. See [Add an Email Account](#).

## *Add Email Accounts*

Use the Accounts & sync menu to add new email accounts on your phone.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.
2. Touch  > **Accounts & sync**.
3. Touch  > **Mail**, and then enter your email address and password.
4. Touch **NEXT** to continue with regular setup, or touch **MANUAL SETUP** if your account requires additional customization.
5. Enter an account name and your name, and then touch **FINISH SETUP**.

You can also use the Mail app to set up additional email accounts. For more information, see [Add an Email Account](#).

## *Add One or More Google Accounts*

Sign in to your Google Account to see your Gmail, contacts, and calendars, and to use Google apps on your phone. See [Create a Google Account](#).

## Forgot Your Google Account Password?

If you have forgotten your Google Account password, you can try to recover it by going to the Google website.

1. On your phone or computer, open your Web browser
2. Go to [google.com/accounts/recovery](https://google.com/accounts/recovery).
3. Select **I don't know my password**.
4. Enter the email address or username that you use to sign in to your Google Account and click **Continue**.
5. Follow the instructions on the screen to reset your password.

## Manage Your Online Accounts

Manage the online accounts you have associated with your phone.

### Remove an Account

You can remove an account from your phone. Removing an account does not remove accounts and information from the online service itself.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Accounts & sync**.
2. Touch the account that you want to remove.
3. Touch  > **Remove**.
4. Touch **REMOVE ACCOUNT** to confirm.

**Important:** Some personal data may be retained by the third-party app after you have removed the account from your phone.

### Sync All Your Accounts Automatically

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Accounts & sync**.
2. Touch the **Auto-sync** ON/OFF switch to turn automatic sync on or off.

### Change Synced Data or Settings for an Account

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Accounts & sync**.
2. Touch the account that you want to update.



3. Touch the item you want to sync or edit.

## Location Settings

Your Location settings menu lets you select how your phone determines its location (using the wireless network, GPS satellites, both, or neither).

### Location Setting

Your phone is equipped with a Location setting for use in connection with location-based services.

The Location feature allows the network to detect your position. Turning **Location** off will hide your location from everyone except 911.

**Note:** Turning on **Location** will allow the network to detect your position using GPS technology, making some Sprint applications and services easier to use.

To enable your phone's Location setting feature:

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Location**.
2. Touch the ON/OFF switch to turn location services on and off.
3. Under Location sources, select the location mode you want. For example, for a better estimate of your location, choose **High accuracy**. To save battery power, choose **Battery saving**.

When you turn the Location setting feature on, the phone displays the  icon on the status bar. When you turn Location setting off, the phone displays the  icon.

**Important:** Turning off a location service means no applications on your phone will collect your location data through that location service. However, third party applications may collect — and your phone may continue to provide — location data through other services, including through Wi-Fi and signal triangulation.

### Google's Location Reporting

Select this option if you want to allow Google to collect anonymous location data or to allow certain apps to determine your location.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Location**.
2. Touch **Google Location Reporting**.
3. Touch **Location Reporting** and **Location History** to turn these settings on or off.

## Security Settings

Use the Security settings to help increase your phone security, privacy, and more.

## Screen Lock Settings

You can increase the security of your phone by creating a screen lock. When enabled, you will be asked to draw the correct unlock pattern on the screen, enter the correct PIN, or enter the correct password to unlock the phone's control keys, buttons, and touchscreen. You can also use face recognition to unlock your screen.

### Enable or Disable the Lock and Security Screens

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Security**.
2. Touch **Screen lock** to show the lock screen and not the security screen.
3. Touch **No lock screen** to disable both the lock and security screens.

### Use Face Unlock

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Security**.
2. Touch **Screen lock** > **Face Unlock**.
3. Touch **Set it up** > **Continue** and follow the screen instructions.
4. Choose a backup lock to use in case the phone doesn't recognize you.
5. Touch **Lock phone after**, and then specify the idle time before the screen is locked.

You'll be asked to unlock the screen every time your phone is turned on or when it's idle for a certain period of time.

To further improve security:

- Touch **Improve face matching** in the Security screen to train your phone to recognize your face in different situations, such as when you're wearing glasses or sporting a beard.
- Select **Liveness check** on the Security screen. You'll be asked to blink to unlock the screen.

### Use a Screen Unlock Pattern

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Security**.
2. Touch **Screen lock** > **Pattern**.
3. Draw the screen unlock pattern by connecting at least four dots in a vertical, horizontal, or diagonal direction. Lift your finger from the screen when finished.
4. The phone records the pattern. Touch **CONTINUE**.
5. When prompted, draw the screen unlock pattern again, and then touch **CONFIRM**.

If you fail to draw the correct unlock pattern on the screen after five attempts, you will be prompted to wait for 30 seconds before you can try again.

**Note:** To change your unlock screen pattern, open the Notifications panel, and then touch  > **Security** > **Screen lock**. Draw your current screen unlock pattern and then touch **Pattern**.

### Use a Screen Unlock PIN

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Security**.
2. Touch **Screen lock** > **PIN**.
3. Enter a PIN and touch **CONTINUE**.
4. Enter your PIN again to confirm and touch **OK**.

If you fail to enter the correct PIN after five attempts, you will be prompted to wait for 30 seconds before you can try again.

### Use a Screen Unlock Password

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Security**.
2. Touch **Screen lock** > **Password**.
3. Enter a password and touch **CONTINUE**.
4. Enter your password again to confirm and touch **OK**.

If you fail to enter the correct password after five attempts, you will be prompted to wait for 30 seconds before you can try again.

## *Bypass the Lock Screen*

After you've set a screen lock for your phone, you can just skip the lock screen and go straight to the security screen for unlocking your phone.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Security**.
2. Select the **Bypass lock screen on wake** option.

## *Lock Screen and Password Settings*

Increase your privacy by selecting what type of information you want to display on the lock screen. You can also choose to make passwords invisible as you enter them on your phone.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Security**.
2. Do any of the following:

- Touch **Notification settings** and select which notifications appear on the lock screen.
- Touch **Unlock Music automatically** to bypass the security screen when launching Music from the lock screen.
- Select the **Incoming phone calls** option to hide the private contact's name and photo on the lock screen. See [Private Contacts](#).
- Clear the **Make password visible** option (recommended) to make passwords invisible as you enter them on your phone.

## *Allow Installation of Third-Party Programs*

By default, you can install only programs and games downloaded from Google Play. The Security menu lets you allow installation of non-Play Store apps on your phone.

To allow installation of non-Play Store apps on the phone:

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Security**.
2. Select the **Unknown sources** option.

**Important:** After installing the app, go back to **Settings > Security** and make sure to clear the **Unknown sources** option. This can help protect your phone from installing other insecure apps from the Web.

## *Work with Certificates*

Use client and Certificate Authority (CA) digital certificates to enable your phone to access VPN or secured Wi-Fi networks, and also to provide authentication to online servers. You can get a certificate from your system administrator or download it from sites that require authentication.

**Note:** Some apps such as your browser or email client let you install certificates directly in the app. See the app's help for details.

### *Install a Digital Certificate*

**Note:** You must set a lock screen PIN or password before installing a digital certificate.

1. Save the certificate file in the root folder on your phone.
2. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Security**.
3. Touch **Install from storage**.
4. If you have more than one certificate in the root folder, select the certificate you want to install.
5. Enter a name for the certificate and touch **OK**.

# Accessibility Settings

Use these settings when you've downloaded and installed an accessibility tool, such as a screen reader that provides voice feedback. You can turn accessibility functions or services on or off.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch .
2. Touch **Accessibility** and choose the settings you want. Options include:
  - **TalkBack**: Turn this option on if you want your phone to provide spoken feedback. TalkBack helps blind and low-vision users.
  - **Font size**: Touch this option to select a font size for better readability.
  - **Captions**: Turn this option on and then touch it to customize captions for your phone.
  - **Magnification gestures**: Touch this option to enable magnification gestures such as zooming in or out by triple-tapping the screen.
  - **Power button ends call**: When selected, you can press the **Power** button to end a call.
  - **Auto-rotate screen**: Select this option to automatically change the screen orientation when the phone is rotated.
  - **Speak passwords**: When selected, your phone will speak the passwords you enter on your phone.
  - **Show magnifier**: Select to show the magnifier to enlarge text.
  - **Accessibility shortcut**: Touch this option to quickly turn on accessibility features on your phone.
  - **Text-to-speech output**: Touch to select the text-to-speech engine, set the speech speed, or listen to a speech synthesis demo.
  - **Touch & hold delay**: Set the delay when touching and holding items on the screen.

## Navigate Your Phone with TalkBack

Use TalkBack if you need to navigate your phone by spoken feedback. When you touch the screen, your phone vibrates and gives you an audible response so you know what you are touching.

### Turn TalkBack On

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch .

2. Touch **Accessibility > TalkBack**.
3. Touch the ON/OFF switch.
4. Read the TalkBack disclaimer and then touch **OK**. You'll be prompted to enable **Explore by touch**, which provides an audible description of what you're touching on the screen.

A short tutorial explaining how to use TalkBack will begin playing after you turn on TalkBack.

**Note:** TalkBack works best if you turn off auto-rotate and turn on **Explore by touch**.

## Use TalkBack Gestures

When TalkBack is turned on and the Explore by touch setting is selected, the regular touch gestures are replaced by the TalkBack gestures.

**Note:** HTC gestures such as 3-finger swiping may not be available when TalkBack gestures are enabled.

To open an item:

1. Drag your finger on the screen to find and select the item.
2. Double-tap anywhere on the screen to open the item.

To move an item:

1. Drag your finger on the screen to find the item.
2. Double-tap anywhere on the screen, but don't lift your finger on the second tap.
3. Drag the item to a new spot and then lift your finger.

To scroll through a screen:

- Use two fingers to swipe up, down, left or right.

To unlock the lock screen:

- Use two fingers to swipe up from the bottom of the screen.

To open the Notifications panel:

- Use two fingers to swipe down from the top of the screen.

## Assign TalkBack Shortcuts

TalkBack has customizable gestures that you can use to open the Notifications panel, view recent apps, access TalkBack controls, and more.

**Important:** The steps below are described using the regular gestures. Use the corresponding TalkBack gestures if you already have TalkBack turned on.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch .
2. Touch **Accessibility** > **TalkBack**.
3. Touch  > **Settings** > **Manage gestures**.
4. Touch any of the gestures under Shortcut gestures, and then select an action.

## Use TalkBack Context Menus

TalkBack has context menus for controlling continuous reading and global TalkBack controls. These menus can be accessed using TalkBack shortcut gestures.

1. Turn TalkBack on.
2. Do one of the following:
  - To open the continuous reading menu, use one finger to swipe up and right in one continuous movement.
  - To open the global context menu, use one finger to swipe down and right in one continuous movement.

**Note:** If you already changed the TalkBack shortcut gestures, check your TalkBack settings for the appropriate gesture.

3. Touch and hold anywhere on the screen.
4. Drag your finger around the screen to explore the options.

**Note:** To cancel an action, drag your finger to your starting position.

## Change the TalkBack Reading Speed

**Important:** The steps below are described using the regular gestures. Use the corresponding TalkBack gestures if you already have TalkBack turned on.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch .
2. Touch **Accessibility** > **Text-to-speech output** > **Speech rate**.
3. Select a speech rate.

**Tip:** You can test the speech rate by touching **Listen to an example**.

## Change the TalkBack Language Settings

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch .
2. Touch **Accessibility**.
3. Do one of the following:
  - Select a different language: Touch **Text-to-speech output** > **Google Text-to-speech Engine** > **Language**.
  - Install a language: Touch **Text-to-speech output** > **Google Text-to-speech Engine** > **Install voice data**.
4. Select the language you want to use.

**Note:** Not all languages are supported.

## *Backup and Reset*

Find ways on how to back up your data or how to reset the phone.

### *Backup*

Always keep important stuff on your phone. Back up your phone before you erase the storage, do a factory reset, or upgrade to a new phone.

#### Backup Options

- **HTC Backup.** Use the built-in HTC Backup to back up your accounts, apps, settings, and more to the cloud so that it will be easier to restore them on your phone (after a factory reset) or on a newer phone.
- **HTC Sync Manager.** Use HTC Sync Manager to import music, photos, and videos to your computer. You can also sync locally stored contacts, calendar events, bookmarks, documents, and playlists to your computer. Likewise, HTC Sync Manager is a good alternative if you don't want to back up your accounts, settings, and other personal content to the cloud. You can use it to create backups of your phone on your computer. For details, see [HTC Sync Manager](#).
- **Other backup options.** Separately back up other data and file types if they're not supported in HTC Backup and HTC Sync Manager. In some apps, you can back up data to the storage on the phone so you can easily restore them after a factory reset.
  - **Messages.** Back up your text messages to the storage on the phone, or save them as an email attachment. See [Back Up and Restore Your Text Messages](#).
  - **Contacts.** Save contacts and other personal data to your online accounts so you can just sync them when switching to another phone. If you have locally stored contacts



in the People app, export them to the storage on the phone. See [Back Up and Restore Your Contacts](#).

- **Files.** Manually copy and paste files by connecting your phone to your computer as a disk drive. You can also upload files to online storage and services.
- **Other data.** If you added new words to your personal dictionary in the onscreen keyboard, back up the dictionary to the storage or save it as an email attachment. See [Enter Text with Word Prediction on the HTC Sense Keyboard](#). Check the other apps to see if they support exporting data to the storage.

**Note:** If you're backing up data to the storage, don't choose to erase the storage when you do a factory reset.

## Use HTC Backup

Save the time and frustration of restoring your content when you do a factory reset or you lose, damage, or buy another phone. On your phone, use HTC Backup to do a regular backup to the cloud so you can easily restore your content next time.

On your phone, use HTC Backup to do a daily backup to the cloud so you can easily restore your content and settings next time.

HTC Backup uses your Google Drive or Dropbox storage to keep your content and settings. It can back up and restore the following:

- **Personalization settings.** These include your feed sources in HTC BlinkFeed, widgets, wallpaper, Home screen layout, and ringtones.
- **Accounts and passwords.** HTC Backup stores the login credentials for many popular email and social network accounts, including Exchange ActiveSync, Outlook.com, and POP/IMAP.
- **Apps and settings.** These include your contacts stored on your phone, text messages, web bookmarks, personal dictionary, Wi-Fi networks, free apps you've installed, grid size and sort order on the Apps screen, and more. The backup can also include TV remotes and viewing preferences.

## Backup Your Phone to Google Drive

Turn on HTC Backup to do a daily backup of your content over Wi-Fi. You can turn it on by selecting **Back up phone daily** while doing the on-device setup, or enable it in Settings.

**Note:** Depending on the amount of content, doing a manual backup through data connection may incur additional data costs and take a long time. Using a Wi-Fi connection is recommended.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Backup & reset**.

2. Touch **Backup account**.
3. Touch **HTC Account**.
4. Sign in with your Google Account, HTC Account, or Facebook account.
5. On the Cloud storage screen, touch the Google Drive option that has your Google Account name under it, and then touch **OK**.
6. If you used your HTC Account or Facebook account, sign in to your Google Account to access your Google Drive.
7. When prompted, touch **OK** to allow HTC Backup to access your Google Drive.
8. To do a daily backup, make sure the **Automatic backup** switch is on. You can also touch **Back up now** to manually back up your phone anytime.

You'll see the most recent backup date and time under Backup history.

## Restore Your Backup to Your Phone From Google Drive

If you backed up your phone to Google Drive before, you can restore your backup to your phone, or to a new HTC phone.

**Note:** Depending on the amount of content, doing a manual backup through data connection may incur additional data costs and take a long time. Using a Wi-Fi connection is recommended.

**Note:** To restore paid apps, you need to download and install them from Google Play.

1. When you turn on a new HTC phone for the first time or after a factory reset, choose to restore content, and then select **Restore from HTC Backup** on the Set up phone screen.
2. Make sure to sign in using the same account that you used to back up your phone before. Your backup history will then be displayed.
3. Select a backup, and then touch **NEXT**.
4. If you used your HTC Account or Facebook account to backup your phone, sign in to your Google Account to access your Google Drive.
5. When prompted, allow HTC Backup to access your Google Drive.
6. After your settings have been restored, touch **NEXT** to continue setting up your phone.

Your free apps that you've previously downloaded from Google Play will be restored in the background, and you can track the progress via a notification in the status bar.

The Apps and Home screen shortcuts will be reorganized as in your backup after all of your apps have been installed. You may continue using your phone while apps are being restored.

**Tip:** You can also go to **Settings**, and then touch **Backup & reset > Restore from HTC Backup**. Just make sure that you've already signed in to the same account that you used to back up your phone before. Restoring a backup will overwrite the current data and settings on your phone.

## Reset Your Phone

If your phone has a persistent problem that cannot be solved, you can perform a factory reset (also called a hard reset or master reset). A factory reset reverts the phone back to its initial state — the state before you turned on the phone for the first time.

The following will be removed from the phone when you do a factory reset:

- Your Google Account
- All accounts you've added in **Settings > Accounts & sync** and the data associated with these accounts
- Personal data that you've created or synced to the phone such as your profile, contacts, messages, email, calendar events, and more
- System and application data and settings
- Downloaded apps

Files such as your music, photos, videos, and documents will also be deleted if you select the **Erase all data** option.

Be sure to back up any data and files you want to keep before you do a factory reset.

**Note:** A factory reset may not permanently erase all data from your phone, including personal information.

### Reset Your Phone via Settings

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Backup & reset > Reset phone**.
2. If you also want to delete media and other data on your phone, select **Erase all data**.
3. To delete media and other data on your storage card (if you installed one), touch **Erase SD card**.
4. Touch **OK**.

Once the phone has reset, it will run through the Hands Free Activation and update processes again. When finished, you will see the Welcome screen and Setup application. See [Complete the Setup Application](#) to start over.

## Reset Your Phone Using the Phone Keys

If you can't turn your phone on or access Settings, you can still perform a factory reset by using the hardware buttons on your phone.

**Important:** The Fast boot option in **Settings > Power** must not be selected.

1. With the phone turned off, press and hold the **Volume down** button, and then press and hold the **Power** button.
2. Wait for the screen with the three Android images to appear, and then release the **Power** and **Volume down** buttons.
3. Press **Volume down** to select **FACTORY RESET**, and then press the **Power** button.

**Note:** A factory reset may not permanently erase all data from your phone, including personal information.

## Get Content From Another Phone

These options let you transfer content from a previous device to your new phone.

- See [Transfer Content to Your New Phone](#) for details.

## Display & Gestures Settings

Adjusting your phone's display and gestures settings not only helps you see what you want, it can also help increase battery life.

### Auto-rotate Screen

By default, the screen orientation automatically changes when the phone is rotated. To disable automatic screen orientation:

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Display & gestures**.
2. Clear the **Auto-rotate screen** option and touch .

**Note:** Not all application screens support automatic rotation. The screen orientation automatically changes to landscape mode when you turn the phone sideways.

**Note:** The TalkBack accessibility feature works best if you turn off auto-rotate. For details, see [Navigate Your Phone with TalkBack](#).

## Font Style

Change the font style of your phone.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Display & gestures**.
2. Touch **Font style** and then select the font style to use.

**Tip:** To install more fonts to your phone, touch **GET FONTS ONLINE**.

## Font Size

You can adjust the text size for your viewing comfort.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Display & gestures**.
2. Touch **Font size** and then select the font size.

## Brightness

By default, the screen brightness automatically adjusts depending on the surrounding lighting conditions.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open Quick Settings.
2. Touch the **BRIGHTNESS** tile repeatedly to select the brightness intensity.
3. To further adjust the brightness intensity, touch ■■■ below the **BRIGHTNESS** tile.
4. Drag the slider to adjust the brightness.
5. Touch **OK**.

### Set the Maximum Brightness Level

You can set the maximum brightness level for your phone screen.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Display & gestures**.
2. Touch **Brightness**.
3. Below the **Maximum brightness level**, drag the slider to adjust the setting.

## Screen Timeout (Sleep)

After a period of inactivity, the phone screen turns off to conserve battery power. You can set the idle time before the screen turns off.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Display & gestures**.
2. Touch **Screen timeout**, and then touch the time before the screen turns off.

**Note:** Extended screen timeout periods reduce the battery's talk and standby times.

**Tip:** To turn off and lock the screen quickly, press the **Power** button.

## Daydream

Select your phone's screensaver when it's idle or docked.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Display & gestures**.
2. Touch **Daydream**, and then select a screensaver.
3. Touch .

## Notification Light

Touch this option to select which events you want the Front Indicator Light (LED) to light up and notify you.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Display & gestures**.
2. Touch **Notification light**, and then touch an event for which you want to see the notification LED to light up.

## Media Gesture

Select this option to allow other apps to recognize the 3-finger gesture. Otherwise, the 3-finger gesture will only output the screen to the optional HTC Media Link HD.

**Note:** The 3-finger gesture may not be available when TalkBack gestures are enabled. For details, see [Navigate Your Phone with TalkBack](#).

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Display & gestures**.
2. Touch **Media gesture** to select or clear this option.

## Motion Launch Gestures

Configure the Motion Launch gesture from this setting. See [Wake Up Phone Using Motion Launch](#) for details.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Display & gestures**.

2. Touch **Motion Launch gestures** and enable this feature.

## *Calibrate the Screen*

Recalibrate the screen if you feel that the screen orientation does not respond properly to the way you hold the phone.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Display & gestures** > **G-Sensor calibration**.
2. Place the phone on a flat surface, and then touch **CALIBRATE**.
3. After the recalibration process, touch **OK**.

## *Harman/Kardon Audio Setting*

Use these settings to enable or disable harman/kardon's Clari-Fi and LiveStage audio technologies.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch .
2. Touch **harman/kardon audio**.
3. Touch the ON/OFF switch beside the audio technologies that you want to enable or disable.

## *Sound Settings*

The Sound settings menu lets you control your phone's audio, from ringtones and alerts to touch tones and notifications.

### *General Sound Settings - Sound Profile and Vibrate*

Use the following settings for such features as silent mode, vibrate, and overall phone volume.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Sound** > **Sound profile**.
2. Select **Normal**, **Vibrate**, or **Silent**.
3. To set your phone to always vibrate for calls in addition to any ringer settings, select the **Vibrate** option below **Volumes**.

**Note:** If you selected **Vibrate** as your sound profile (step 2), your phone will vibrate for all notifications and incoming calls.

4. Touch .

## General Sound Settings - Volumes

You can separately adjust your phone's multimedia, ringtone and notifications, and alarm volumes.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Sound** > **Volumes**.
2. Drag the volume sliders on the screen to adjust the ringtone and notifications, music and videos, and alarm volumes.
3. Touch **DONE**.

**Note:** You can adjust the ringer volume in standby mode (or the earpiece volume during a call) by pressing the **Volume** button.

## Do Not Disturb Mode

Use Do not disturb mode to reject calls, and silence audible alerts and notifications, while still having data connection available.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Sound**.
2. Touch the **Do not disturb** ON/OFF switch to turn it on and off.
3. Touch **Do not disturb** to set an auto turn off time or to allow the Clock app alarm and timer sounds to play when Do not disturb is on.

The Do not disturb icon  will appear in the notifications area of the status bar. Even when Do not disturb mode is on, you'll still see notification icons in the status bar to alert you of missed calls, new messages, calendar events, alarms, and other notifications.

## Allow Incoming Calls to Bypass Do Not Disturb Mode

Add important contacts to an exceptions list so that you can still receive their calls even when Do not disturb mode is on.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Sound**.
2. Touch the **Do not disturb**.
3. Touch **Do not disturb exceptions** and then touch .
4. Choose whether to select contacts or groups to add to the exceptions list, or to manually add a phone number that's not available in your contact info.

**Tip:** To remove contacts or numbers from the exceptions list, touch  > **Remove contact**.

5. Select the checkbox to allow incoming calls from contacts on the exceptions list.

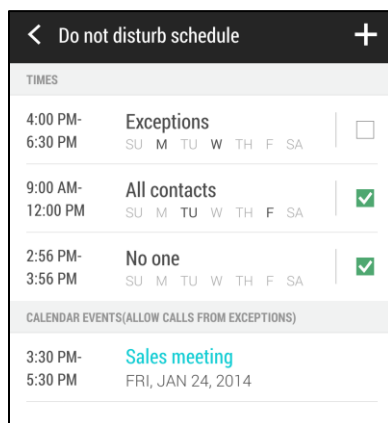


## Set a Do Not Disturb Schedule

You can schedule when you want Do not disturb to turn on. For example, you can set it to turn on during a weekly meeting.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Sound**.
2. Touch **Do not disturb**.
3. Touch **Do not disturb schedule** and then touch .
4. Set the start and end times for the schedule.
5. To have the schedule repeat on specific days, touch **Repeat** and select which days you want it to occur.
6. To select which contacts will be allowed to reach you when the Do not disturb schedule is active, touch **Contacts** to allow calls.
7. Touch **DONE**.

The schedule will be listed on the Do not disturb schedule screen.



**Note:** Calendar events that have Do not disturb enabled will also be listed on the Do not disturb schedule screen.

## Incoming Calls - Ringtone

You can select and assign ringtones for your incoming calls. Your phone provides a variety of ringtones that you can set as the default ringtone of your phone.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Sound** > **Ringtone**.
2. Touch the ringtone you want to use, and then touch **APPLY**. The ringtone briefly plays when selected.

**Note:** To set a sound file as ringtone, see [Set a Song as a Ringtone](#).

## *Incoming Calls - Other Options*

Enable **Quiet ring on pickup** so your phone lowers the ringtone volume the moment you pick it up to answer a call. When your phone is in your bag or pocket, enable **Pocket mode** so the phone rings louder when you have an incoming call. Touch the **Flip to mute** option to mute the phone just by flipping it over.

You can choose to enable or disable the **Quiet ring on pickup** or **Pocket mode** incoming call features.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Sound**.
2. Select or clear the **Quiet ring on pickup** or **Pocket mode** options to enable or disable the features.
3. Touch **Flip to mute** and then select the mute setting.

For more information, see [Motion Gestures](#).

## *Notifications and Alarms*

Use the Notifications and Alarms settings to choose your notification and alarm sounds.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Sound** > **Notification sound** or **Alarm**.
2. Choose the sound you want to use, and then touch **APPLY**.

## *System Sound Settings*

The System sound settings menu lets you select whether you hear tones when touching numbers on the dialpad, selecting onscreen options, and more.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Sound**.
2. Select or customize options under the System menu.
  - **Keypad touch tones:** Select the short tones to use.
  - **Touch sounds:** Play sounds when making an onscreen selection.
  - **Screen lock sounds:** Play sounds when locking or unlocking the screen.
  - **Pull-to-refresh sounds:** Play sounds when pulling the screen down to refresh content.
  - **Vibrate on touch:** Vibrate when touching soft keys and during certain other instances.

- **Emergency tone:** Set behavior when an emergency call is placed.

## Call Settings

Your phone's Call settings menu lets you configure your voicemail options and a number of accessibility options such as hearing-aid amplification and teletypewriter.

### Voicemail Settings

Use this menu to check your voicemail settings such as the voicemail service provider and voicemail number.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Call**.
2. Touch **Voicemail service** or **Voicemail settings**.

### Hearing Aids

Select the **Hearing aids** option to enable hearing aid compatibility that amplifies your phone's in-call volume.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Call**.
2. Select the **Hearing aids** option.

### CDMA Call Settings

Use these options to enable hearing aid compatibility, and adjust several call settings, such as teletypewriter and DDTM.

- With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Call** > **CDMA call settings**.

### TTY Mode

A TTY (teletypewriter, also known as a TDD or Text Telephone) is a telecommunications phone that allows people who are deaf, hard of hearing, or who have speech or language disabilities, to communicate by telephone.

Your phone is compatible with select TTY phones. Please check with the manufacturer of your TTY phone to ensure that it supports digital wireless transmission. Your phone and TTY phone will connect using a special cable that plugs into your phone's headset jack. If this cable was not provided with your TTY phone, contact your TTY phone manufacturer to purchase the connector cable.

When establishing your Sprint service, please call Sprint Customer Service using the state Telecommunications Relay Service (TRS) by first dialing    . Then provide the state TRS with this number: **866-727-4889**.

To turn TTY Mode on or off:

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Call** > **CDMA call settings** > **TTY mode**.
2. Touch **TTY Full**, **TTY HCO**, or **TTY VCO**. Touch **TTY Off** to turn TTY mode off.

**Note:** When enabled, TTY mode may impair the audio quality of non-TTY phones connected to the headset jack.

### **Warning: 911 Emergency Calling**

Sprint recommends that TTY users make emergency calls by other means, including Telecommunications Relay Services (TRS), analog cellular, and landline communications. Wireless TTY calls to 911 may be corrupted when received by public safety answering points (PSAPs), rendering some communications unintelligible. The problem encountered appears related to TTY equipment or software used by PSAPs. This matter has been brought to the attention of the FCC, and the wireless industry and the PSAP community are currently working to resolve this.

### DDTM Mode

Select this option if you want to direct all calls to your voicemail when you are using data connection.

### Other CDMA Call Settings

Select these options to enhance voice privacy, prepend numbers automatically, or use plus code dialing.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Call** > **CDMA call settings**.
2. Select or customize these options.
  - **Voice Privacy:** Select to enable enhanced privacy mode.
  - **Automatic prepend:** Select to automatically add "1" for long distance calls.
  - **Plus code dialing:** Touch to set plus code dialing. See [Make International Calls](#) for details.

### *Internet Call Settings*

Use these options to set up your Internet calling account.

- See [Internet Calls](#).

### *Other Call Settings*

Select these options depending on your call preferences.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Call**.

2. Select or clear these options.

- **Auto answer calls:** Select this option to automatically answer incoming calls just by lifting the phone to your ear.
- **Declined calls:** Select to enable text message and reminder options for declined calls.
- **Save to People:** Select to add unknown numbers to the People list after the call.
- **Phone notification preview:** Select to show caller ID for missed calls on the lock screen and status bar.

## *Apps Settings*

Use the Apps menu to control your application settings or remove apps.

### *Uninstall Third-party Apps*

Uninstall apps that you no longer need to save storage space.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Apps**.
2. On any of the tabs, touch the application you want to uninstall.
3. On the App info screen, touch **Uninstall**.
4. Touch **OK** to confirm.

**Note:** You cannot uninstall programs that are preinstalled on the phone.

### *Clear Application Cache and Data*

Free up storage space and phone memory by deleting application cache and data.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Apps**.
2. Browse to the app you want to clear and then touch it.

**Tip:** Touch  to sort the apps list.

3. In the App info screen, touch **Clear data** or **Clear cache**.

## *Storage Settings*

The storage settings menu lets you view and manage the phone storage.

### *Types of Storage*

Your phone has the following storage types for your apps, data, and files.

- **Phone storage.** This storage combines both the internal storage, where apps, email, data, and text messages are stored, and the file storage, where photos, videos, and music files are kept. When you are running out of phone storage, you can free up space by uninstalling apps, changing download settings, or moving files to your computer or to an online storage service.
- **Storage card.** Use a storage card (purchased separately) for storing more files. You can also set apps such as Camera to store directly to the card.
- **USB storage.** When you plug in an external USB storage device (such as a USB flash drive or an SD card reader), you can view photos and videos stored on the device right from Gallery and play songs stored on the device in Music. You can also open PDFs and edit Office documents.

You need a special cable adapter to connect your phone and a USB storage device. Your phone supports USB storage devices (except portable hard drives) up to 64 GB.

- **Online storage.** If you're using an online storage account that's accessible from your phone, you can store your files to your online storage.

## *Copy Files To or From Your Phone*

You can copy your music, photos, and other files to your phone.

1. Connect your phone to the computer using the supplied USB cable. You'll see options for viewing or importing files on the computer screen.
2. Choose to view files.
3. Copy the files from your computer to your phone, or vice versa.
4. After copying the files, disconnect the phone from the computer.

## *Make More Storage Space*

As you use your phone, you'll accumulate data and fill its storage capacity over time. Here are some tips on how to increase storage space.

### **Run the Storage Wizard**

Free up space in the phone storage by uninstalling apps and deleting files you no longer need. In Settings, touch **Storage > Make more space**.

### **Store Files in Google Drive**

Photos, email attachments, and other documents can be stored in Google Drive and accessed anywhere you are. You can set the Camera app to automatically upload photos to Google Drive. See [Google Drive](#) for details.

**Note:** Google Drive is a third-party app and is not provided by or associated with HTC Corporation.

## Manage Photos and Videos

- Set the Camera app to automatically upload to a photo-sharing site or online storage. You can retrieve them from the photo-sharing site or online storage when needed.

**Note:** Using data services while uploading photos and videos may be costly. You may want to connect to Wi-Fi or disable auto upload of camera shots if you have a limited data plan.

- After taking continuous camera shots, keep only the best shot and discard the rest.
- After editing a photo or trimming a video, the original file is kept. You can delete original files or move them to online storage or to your computer.
- If you are only sending videos through MMS, use a lower resolution. High-resolution video takes up more space. In Camera settings, touch **Video Quality** to change the resolution.

## Back Up Apps Data

Keep only the most recent data from apps on your phone. You can back up calendars, contacts, and bookmarks or export text messages, and personal dictionaries. See [Backup](#).

## Disable Some Apps

Apps, even if not used often, may be running in the background and downloading data into the phone storage. If the app cannot be removed, you can disable it. In Settings, touch **Apps**, slide to the **ALL** tab and select the app that you want to disable. Touch **Disable**.

## Encrypt Data on Your Phone

On the phone storage, you can encrypt data such as your accounts, settings, downloaded apps and their data, media, and other files. On a storage card, you can only encrypt files.

Set a lock screen PIN or password before start encryption. Fully charge the battery and keep your phone connected to the power adapter during encryption. This process takes may take about an hour or so.

You cannot undo encryption on the phone storage. If you want to return to an unencrypted phone, you must perform a factory reset. Once you enable storage card encryption, only new files added after encryption will be encrypted. Files already on the card will not be encrypted. Also, storage card encryption doesn't reformat or erase your card. Encrypted files on the storage card can only be opened by the phone that encrypted them.

## How to Encrypt Data on Your Phone

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Storage**.

2. Touch **Phone storage encryption**. Or, touch **Encrypt SD card content**.
3. Touch **NEXT**.
4. Enter the lock screen PIN or password, and touch **NEXT**.
5. Touch **ENABLE ENCRYPTION**

During phone storage encryption, the phone may restart a few times. When storage encryption is complete, enter your PIN or password.

**Note:** If you turn off SD card encryption to stop encrypting new files, previously encrypted files will remain encrypted. To access these files, you must enable encryption again for your storage card.

## Power Settings

Use the Power settings to check the phone's battery, enable Power saver mode, and more.

### *Optimize Battery Life with Power Saver Mode*

Power saver mode helps to increase battery life. It reduces the usage of phone features that drain the battery such as the display and data connection.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open the Quick Settings panel.
2. Touch ■■■ below the **POWER SAVER** tile to choose which phone features to conserve power for.

**Note:** If **Data connection** is selected, your phone automatically disconnects from the mobile network after 15 minutes when the screen is off and the data connection is idle (no download activity, streaming, or data usage). It reconnects and then disconnects periodically when the data connection is idle to save battery power.

**Note:** Keep in mind though that the **Sleep mode** option for the data connection in **Settings > Power**, when enabled, overrides power saver mode.

3. Touch the ON/OFF switch next to **Power saver** to turn Power saver mode on or off.

### *Use Extreme Power Saving Mode*

In times when you don't need to use much of your phone, turn Extreme power saving mode on to extend battery life longer. In this mode, standby time can last longer than usual, and you can only use the most basic functions such as phone calls, text messaging, and email.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar to open the Quick Settings panel.
2. Touch the **EXTREME POWER SAVING MODE** tile to turn the mode on. Or to set when to automatically switch this mode on, touch ■■■ below the tile.



3. Select the check box, and then choose at which battery level the mode will turn on.

## Check Battery Usage

See a ranking list of apps that are using the battery. You can also see how much and how long the battery has been used for each app.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Power** > **Usage**.
2. Touch an app to check how it's using the battery. You'll see how much battery power is used by resources such as the CPU for the app and other use details.

**Tip:** If you see buttons while viewing an app's battery use details, you can touch them to adjust settings that affect battery usage, stop the app, and more.

## Check Battery History

Check how long you've been using the phone since the last charge. You can also see a chart that shows how long the screen has been on, and how long you've been using connections like the mobile network or Wi-Fi.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Power** > **History**.
2. If you've used the phone for a long time since the last charge, swipe left or right to scale the graph that details battery usage over time. You can also slide your fingers together or apart to scale the graph.

## Display the Battery Percentage

You can check the percentage of remaining battery power right from the status bar.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Power**.
2. Select **Show battery level**.

## Battery Saving Tips

How long the battery can last before it needs recharging depends on how you use your phone. The power management features of your phone helps increase battery life. In times when you need to extend the battery life more, try out some of these tips.

### Check Power Usage

Monitoring your battery usage helps you identify what's using the most power so you can choose what to do about it. For details, see [Check Battery Usage](#).

### Manage Your Connections

- **Turn off wireless connections you're not using.** To turn on or off connections such as mobile data, Wi-Fi, or Bluetooth, go to Settings and touch their ON/OFF switches.

- **Turn GPS on only when a precise location is needed.** To prevent some apps from using GPS in the background, clear the **Device sensors** option in **Settings > Location > Mode**. Select it only when you need your precise location while using navigation or location-based apps. For more information on location services, see [Location Settings](#).
- If the **Sleep mode** option in **Settings > Power** is enabled, at low peak times, your phone will turn off the data connection after the screen has been off for 15 minutes and there's no network activity (no downloads, streaming, or data usage). The data connection resumes when you switch the screen back on.
- Turn on Airplane mode when you don't need any wireless connections and you don't want to receive calls or messages. For details, see [Airplane Mode](#).

## Manage Your Display

Lowering the brightness, letting the display sleep when not in use, and keeping it simple helps save battery power.

- Use automatic brightness (the default), or manually lower the brightness.
- Set the screen timeout to a shorter time.
- Don't use a live wallpaper for your Home screen. Animation effects are nice to show off to other people but they drain your battery. Changing your wallpaper to a plain, black background can also help a little. The less color is displayed, the less battery is used.
- Set the Web browser to auto dim the screen while webpages load. Open the Internet app, and then touch  > **Settings > Accessibility > Dim screen during page loading**.

For more details, see [Display & Gestures Settings](#).

## Manage Your Apps

- Install the latest software and application updates. Updates sometimes include battery performance improvements.
- Uninstall or disable apps that you never use.

Many apps run processes or sync data in the background even when you're not using them. If there are apps that you don't need anymore, uninstall them. See [Uninstall Third-party Apps](#).

If an app came preloaded and can't be uninstalled, disabling the app can still prevent it from continuously running or syncing data. In **Settings > Apps**, swipe to the **ALL** tab, touch the app, and then touch **Disable**.

## Limit Background Data and Sync

Background data and sync can use a lot of battery power if you have many apps syncing data in the background. It's recommended not to let apps sync data too often. Determine which apps can be set with longer sync times, or sync manually.

- In Settings, touch **Accounts & sync** and check what types of data are being synced in your online accounts. When the battery is starting to run low, temporarily disable syncing some data.
- If you have many email accounts, consider prolonging the sync time of some accounts. In the Mail app, select an account, touch  > **Settings** > **Sync, Send & Receive**, and then adjust the settings under Sync schedule.
- When you're not traveling from one place to another, sync weather updates of only your current location, rather than in all of your named cities. Open the Weather app, and then touch  > **Edit** to remove unneeded cities.
- Choose widgets wisely. Some widgets constantly sync data. Consider removing the ones that are not important from your Home screen.
- In Play Store, touch  > **Settings**, and then clear **Auto-add widgets** to avoid automatically adding Home screen widgets whenever you've installed new apps. Also touch **Auto-update apps** > **Do not auto-update apps** if you're fine with updating apps from Play Store manually.

## More Battery Saving Tips

To squeeze in a little bit more battery power, try these tips.

- Tone down the ringtone and media volume.
- Minimize the use of vibration or sound feedback. In Settings, touch **Sound** and choose which ones you don't need and can disable.
- Check your apps' settings as you may find more options to optimize the battery.

## Language & Keyboard Settings

Your phone's Language & keyboard settings let you select a language for the phone's screens and menus, as well as manage a personal user dictionary.

### Change the Phone Language

Changing the language adjusts the keyboard layout, date and time formatting, and more.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Language & keyboard**.

2. Touch **Language** and touch the language you want to use.

## *Spell Checker*

Turn this feature on to underline misspelled words as you type.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Language & keyboard**.
2. Touch the ON/OFF switch next to **Spell checker**.

## *Keyboard and Input Methods - Google Voice Typing*

This option lets you choose the input language for Google voice typing, block offensive words, or download offline speech recognition.

- With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Language & keyboard > Google voice typing**.

## *Keyboard and Input Methods - HTC Sense Input*

The Language & keyboard settings let you select a preferred input method, control keyboard settings, and more.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Language & keyboard > HTC Sense Input**.
2. Change any of these settings.
  - **Keyboard selection:** Add or remove languages from the touch input language list.
    - **Keyboard types:** Select the keyboard layout to use.
    - **Bilingual prediction:** Activate word prediction for a second language.
  - Enable or disable keyboard settings including sound and vibration feedback, show or hide arrow keys, and enable trace keyboard.
  - **Advanced settings**
    - **Trace color:** Select the color to use when using the Trace keyboard.
    - **Quick ".":** Enable this option if you want to insert a period every time you double tap the space bar.
  - **Advanced settings: Prediction preference**
    - **Word prediction:** Enable the word prediction feature.
    - **Next word prediction:** Turn on suggestion options for the next word while entering text.

- **Advanced settings: Finger touch calibration**
  - **Calibration tool:** Recalibrate the keyboard if you feel that the keys are not responding accurately to your touches.
  - **Reset calibration:** Reset the calibration back to factory default.
- **Personal dictionary:** Add, edit, or remove words in the predictive text dictionary. For more information, see [Enter Text with Word Prediction on the HTC Sense Keyboard](#).

## Keyboard and Input Methods - Swype

Customize and learn how to use the Swype keyboard through the Swype settings menu. See [Swype Keyboard](#) for details.

- With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Language & keyboard** > **Swype**.

## Speech Settings

Use these settings to adjust your Google Voice Search preferences or select your default text-to-speech output.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Language & keyboard**.
2. Change any of these settings.
  - **Voice Search:** Touch to change the default voice search language, speech output, and more
  - **Text-to-speech output:** Touch to select the text-to-speech engine, set the speech speed, or listen to speech synthesis demo.

## Date & Time Settings

By default, your phone automatically uses the network-provided date, time zone, and time. However, you can set the date, time zone, and time manually if you need to.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Date & time**.
2. Clear the **Automatic date & time** and **Automatic time zone** options.
3. Touch **Set date**, change the date and touch **OK**.
4. Touch **Set time**, adjust the time and touch **OK**.
5. Touch **Select time zone**, and then select the time zone in the list.
6. Select the **Use 24-hour format** option to toggle between using a 12-hour or 24-hour (military) time format.

7. Touch **Choose date format**, and then select how you want dates to display on your phone. The selected date format also applies to the date displayed in the Alarm Clock.

## Printing

Print from anywhere you are using Cloud Print. For more information about Cloud Print, see [google.com/cloudprint](http://google.com/cloudprint).

- With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Printing** > **Cloud Print**.

## Activate This Device

If your phone has not been activated on the Sprint network, you can use the **Activate this device** menu option to begin the process.

- With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **Activate this device**. Follow the onscreen prompts to begin activation.

If your phone is already activated, you'll see a device Self Service screen with account information, usage details, and more.

## System Updates

From time to time, system software updates for your phone may be available. Your phone can automatically check and notify you if an update is available. You can download and install the update to your phone. Depending on the type of update, the update may erase all your personal data and customized settings, and it could also remove any programs you have installed. Make sure that you have backed up the information and files you want to keep.

**Note:** Checking and downloading system software updates require data access that will count towards your monthly data allowance.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  > **System updates**.
2. Touch any of these available settings:
  - **Update profile:** Update your online user profile information. See [Update Your Profile](#) for details.
  - **Update PRL:** Update the Preferred Roaming List (PRL). See [Update Your PRL](#) for details.
  - **HTC software update:** Update the phone's operating system. See [Update the Operating System](#) for details.

## About Your Phone

The About menu lets you access important phone information and view legal and safety information.

1. With two fingers, swipe down from the status bar, and then touch  >**About**.
2. Scroll through the list and select options to view or customize information.
  - **Hardware and software version:** Displays the phone hardware and software version.
  - **Software updates:** Check if there are is a new software update available for your phone.
  - **Tell HTC and error reporting:** Send error, preference, and usage reports to HTC.
  - **Help:** Enable quick tips to appear on the screen.
  - **Network:** Check the operator, signal strength, mobile network type, and more.
  - **Phone identity:** Check the phone's name, model number, IMEI, SIM ID, MEID current user name, and number.
  - **Software information:** View software related information such as the Android, HTC Sense, and software versions.
  - **Legal information:** View HTC legal information, privacy alert, Google legal information and open source licenses.

# Proprietary Notices

---

©2014 HTC Corporation. All rights reserved.

HTC, the HTC logo, HTC One, the HTC One logo, HTC BlinkFeed, HTC Connect, HTC Sense, HTC Sense TV, Dimension Plus, Motion Launch, UFocus, VideoPic, Zoe, and all other HTC product and service names referenced herein are the trademarks or registered trademarks of HTC Corporation and its affiliates in the U.S. and other countries.

Portions of this document ©2014 Sprint. All rights reserved.

Sprint, Sprint Spark and the logos are trademarks of Sprint.

Harman Kardon, the harman/kardon (logo), Clari-Fi, and LiveStage are trademarks or registered trademarks of Harman International Industries, Incorporated.

The HD Voice logo is a trademark of the GSMA Ltd.

Google, Android, Android Beam, Gmail, Google+, Google Chrome, Google Drive, Google Maps, Google Now, Google Play, Google Voice Search, Google Wallet, Hangouts, and YouTube are trademarks of Google Inc.

Microsoft, Windows, ActiveSync, Windows Media, and Windows Vista are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks by Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Wi-Fi® is a registered trademark of the Wireless Fidelity Alliance, Inc.

Facebook is a trademark of Facebook, Inc.

Twitter is a trademark of Twitter, Inc., and is used under license.

FLICKR is a trademark and/or registered trademark of Yahoo! Inc.

DLNA is a trademark or registered trademark of Digital Living Network Alliance. All rights reserved. Unauthorized use is strictly prohibited.

Apple, iPhone, iTunes, and Mac OS are trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc.

Dropbox is a trademark of Dropbox, Inc.

Polaris Office is a trademark of Infracore, Inc.

Swype is a trademark or registered trademark of Nuance Communications.

Soundhound is a registered trademark of Soundhound, Inc.

LinkedIn is a registered trademark or trademark of LinkedIn Corporation and its affiliates in the United States and/or other countries.



Kid Mode and Zoodles are trademarks of Inquisitive Minds, Inc.

Instagram is a trademark of Instagram, LLC.

microSD is a registered trademark of SD-3C, LLC.

foursquare® is a trademark of Foursquare Labs, Inc. ("Foursquare") in the U.S. and other countries.

LTE is a trademark of European Telecommunications Standards Institute (ETSI) registered for the benefit of its members.

All other trademarks and service marks mentioned herein, including company names, product names, service names and logos, are the property of their respective owners and their use herein does not indicate an affiliation with, association with, or endorsement of or by HTC Corporation. Not all marks listed necessarily appear in this User Guide.

The HTC Sync Manager software can be used with materials that you own or are lawfully authorized to use and/or duplicate. Unauthorized use and/or duplication of copyrighted material may be a violation of copyright law in the United States and/or other countries/ regions. Violation of U.S. and international copyright laws may subject you to significant civil and/or criminal penalties. HTC Corporation shall not be held responsible for any damages or losses (direct or indirect) that you may incur as a result of using this software.

Screen images contained herein are simulated. HTC shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein, nor for incidental or consequential damages resulting from furnishing this material.

The information is provided "as is" without warranty of any kind and is subject to change without notice. HTC also reserves the right to revise the content of this document at any time without prior notice. No part of this document may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording or storing in a retrieval system, or translated into any language in any form without prior written permission of HTC.

# Index

---

- 2.5D, 152
  - Apply to Photo, 168
- 3G, 132
- 3-way Calling, 60
- 4G, 132
- Accessibility
  - TalkBack, 221
- Accessory Jack, 13
- Account Passwords, 10
- Accounts, 80
- Activation, 3
- Airplane Mode, 212
- Alarm, 180
- Alarm Sound, 214
- Android Beam. See NFC
- Android Market. See Google Play
- Answer a Call, 59
- Applications
  - Clear App Cache, 237
  - Install Third-Party Apps, 220
  - Uninstall, 237
- Apps
  - Disable, 239
  - From the Web, 109
  - Get Apps, 107
  - Google Play, 107
  - Open, 30
  - Open from Lock Screen, 30
  - Recent Apps, 30
  - Refresh Content, 31
  - Uninstall, 109
- Apps and Settings, 30
- Apps Screen
  - Arrange Apps, 32
  - Group Apps, 32
  - Hide/Unhide Apps, 33
  - Move Apps and Folders, 32
  - Remove Apps from Folder, 33
- Back Key, 18
- Backup, 224
  - Options, 224
  - Use HTC Backup, 225
- Battery
  - Check History, 241
  - Check Usage, 241
  - Extreme Power Saving Mode, 240
  - Power Saver Mode, 240
  - Save Power, 241
  - Settings, 240
- Battery Saving Tips, 241
- Block List, 63
- Bluetooth, 193
  - Car Kit, 193
  - Disconnect Device, 194
  - FTP Server, 197
  - Headset, 193
  - Receive Files, 196
  - Reconnect Phone, 194
  - Send Information, 195
  - Unpair Device, 194
- Bokeh, 152
- Bokeh Refocus, 165
- Bonus Storage, 185
- Brightness, 229
  - Maximum Level, 229
- Browser, 141
  - Add Bookmarks, 143
  - Browsing History, 144
  - Find Text, 142
  - Open, 141
  - Options, 145
  - Private Browsing, 145
  - Read or Watch Later, 143
  - Tabs, 142
- Burst Shots, 153
- Calculator, 179
- Calendar, 176
  - Create Event, 177

- Edit Event, 177
- Invites, 178
- Make Call From, 57
- Share Events, 178
- Show or Hide, 177
- Snooze Reminders, 179
- Views, 176
- Call Forwarding, 61
- Call History, 56, 62
  - Block Caller, 63
  - Make Call From, 56
  - Open, 62
  - Prepend a Number, 63
  - Save a Number, 63
- Call Log, 62
- Call Services, 60
  - Call Forwarding, 61
  - Call Waiting, 61
  - Caller ID, 61
- Call Waiting, 61
- Caller ID, 61
- Camera, 147
  - Capture Mode, 148
  - Close the App, 149
  - Filters, 148
  - Front Camera, 14
  - Getting Started, 147
  - Manual Settings, 158
  - Record Video, 151
  - Self-portrait, 155
  - Set Flash, 148
  - Take a Photo, 149
  - Tips, 150
  - Use Volume Buttons, 149
  - Zooming, 148
- Camera Flash, 148
- Camera Mode
  - Burst, 153
  - Customized, 159
  - Dual Capture, 156
  - Pan 360, 156
  - Video, 151
  - Zoe Camera, 154
- Camera Scenes
  - HDR, 157
  - Panorama, 155
  - Portrait, 155
  - Slow Motion, 157
- Camera Settings, 159
- Car Kit, 193
- Change the Language, 243
- Charger/Accessory Jack, 13
- Clari-Fi, 116
- Clear App Cache, 237
- Clock, 180
  - Set Date, 180
- Cloud Services. See Online Storage
- Contacts List, Contacts, 70
- Copy and Paste Photos, 169
- Data Services
  - 3G, 132
  - Password, 11
  - Spark LTE, 132
  - Track Usage, 134
- Data Usage, 134
- Date & Time, 245
- Daydream, 230
- DDTM Mode, 236
- Dimension Plus, 168
  - Edit Subject, 168
- Display, 228
  - Auto-rotate Screen, 228
  - Font Style, 229
  - Font, Text Size, 229
- DLNA, 129
  - HTC Connect, 129
- Do Not Disturb Mode, 232
- Drag, 24
- Dropbox, 188
  - Check Storage, 189
  - Unlink Phone, 189
- Dual Capture, 156
- Dual Speakers, 13
- Duo Camera, 152
  - Tips, 152
- Duo Effects, 165
  - Change Focus, 165
  - Dimension Plus, 168

- Foregrounder, 166
- Seasons, 167
- Earpiece, 13
- Edit PDFs and Office Documents, 187
- Edit Photos, 163
- Electronic Program Guide, 123
- Email
  - Account Settings, 91
  - Add Account, 84
  - Add Exchange ActiveSync, 84
  - Compose and Send, 86
  - Delete Accounts, 90
  - Delete Messages, 88
  - Delete Search, 88
  - Make Call From, 57
  - Manage Email Messages, 88
  - Move Messages, 88
  - Read and Reply, 87
  - Smart Sync, 90
- Email Account
  - Add Exchange ActiveSync, 215
  - Add POP3, IMAP, 215
- Emergency Numbers, 57
- Emoji, 46
- Encrypt Data, 239
- Enhanced 911 (E911), 57
- Enter Text, 46
- Entertainment Apps, 107
- EPG, 123
  - Add Rooms, 123
  - Organize Rooms, 124
- Event
  - Create, 177
  - Edit, 177
- Exchange ActiveSync
  - Features, 89
  - Flag Email, 89
  - Meeting Request, 90
  - Out of Office Reply, 89
- Extreme Power Saving Mode, 240
- Facebook, 104
- Factory Data Reset, 227
- Feeds Panel, 35
  - Off, 36

- Flick, 25
- Foregrounder, 166
- Free Storage, 185
- Gallery
  - Action Sequence, 170
  - Change Video Playback Speed, 173
  - Copy & Paste, 169
  - Create GIF, 170
  - Create Zoe, 173
  - Duo Effects, 165
  - Edit Group Shot, 171
  - Edit Photos, 163
  - Object Removal, 171
  - Photo Highlights, 160
  - View Albums, 160
  - View Pan 360 Photos, 169
  - View Pictures and Videos, 160
  - View Timeline, 160
  - Visual Search, 163
  - Watch Videos, 172
- Gestures, 23
- GIF Creator, 170
- Global Roaming Mode, 205
- Gmail, 80
  - Add Account, 84
  - Create Account, 80
  - Get Help, 84
  - Inbox, 81
  - Reply Email, 83
  - Send Email, 83
- Google Account, 80
  - Add Account, 215
  - Forgot Password, 216
- Google Chrome, 145
- Google Drive, 184
  - Bonus Space, 185
  - Check Space, 185
  - Export Documents From Phone, 188
  - Give Access, 187
  - Share Link to Documents and Files, 186
  - Upload Photos and Videos, 186
  - Work with Documents, 187
- Google Location Service, 217
- Google Maps, 111

- Get Around Maps, 111
- Get Directions, 113
- Moving in Maps, 112
- Search Location, 112
- Google Now, 139
- Google Play, 107
  - Find and Install Apps, 108
  - Restore Apps, 108
- Google Play Movies & TV, 128
- Google Play Music, 121
- Google Search, 138
- Google Voice Search, 138
- Google Voice Typing, 244
- Google Wallet, 107
- Google+, 104
- Group Messaging, 95
- Group Text, 95
- Harman/Kardon Audio, 116
- harman/kardon Settings, 231
- HD Voice, 54
- HDR, 157
- Headset Jack, 14
- Hearing Aids, 235
- History
  - Erase, 63
- Home Key, 18
- Home Screen, 10
  - Add App Shortcuts, 41
  - Add or Remove Widget Panel, 40
  - Add Widgets, 40
  - Arrange Widget Panels, 40
  - Change Main Home Screen, 39
  - Change Widget Settings, 41
  - Customize, 38
  - Feeds Panel, 35
  - Launch Bar, 39
  - Move or Remove Items, 41
  - Organize Widget Panels, 40
  - Settings, 213
  - Wallpaper, 38
- HTC BlinkFeed, 35
  - Customize, 36
  - Customize Highlights, 37
  - Off, 36
  - Post Status, 38
  - Remove Content, 38
  - Save Articles, 38
  - Select Feeds, 36
  - Show and Add Topics, 37
  - Show Your Content, 36
  - Subscribe to Other Regions, 37
  - Subscribe to RSS, 37
- HTC Car, 109
  - Customize, 111
  - Explore Places, 110
  - Find Places, 110
  - Make Calls, 111
  - Play Music, 111
  - Receive Calls, 111
  - Voice Commands, 110
- HTC Connect, 129
- HTC Media Link HD, 128
- HTC Sense Input Settings, 244
- HTC Sync Manager, 191
  - Get Help, 193
  - Install, 192
  - Transfer iPhone, 192
- Image Match, 163
- IMAP Email, 84
- In-call Options, 59
- Incoming Call
  - Answer, 59
  - Mute Ringtone, 59
  - Reject, 59
- International Data Roaming, 207
- Internet App. See Browser
- Internet Calls, 68
  - Add Account, 68
  - Make an Internet Call, 68
- iPhone, 192
- iPhone Transfer, 7
- IR Port, 14
- Keyboard
  - Touchscreen, 46
- Keyboard Settings, 244
- Kid Mode, 130
- Language Settings, 243
- LED, 14

- Live Sports, 125
- LiveStage, 116
- Location Settings, 217
  - On or Off, 217
- Lock Screen, 16
  - Bypass, 219
  - Customize, 16
  - Disable, 18
  - Notification Widget, 17
  - Settings, 213
  - Unlock, 16
- Long Distance Calls, 58
- LTE, 132
- Mail, 84
  - Inbox, 85
- Media Gesture, 230
- Messages
  - Back Up Messages, 100
  - Block Messages, 99
  - Delete Messages, 99
  - Secure Box, 98
- Messaging, 80
- microSD Card, 199
  - Check Capacity, 201
  - Erase Contents, 201
  - Insert, 199
  - Remove, 200
  - Unmount, 201
- microSD Card Tray, 14
- MMS, 93
  - Create Slideshow, 94
  - Reply, 96
  - Send, 93
- Mobile Hotspot, 145
- Motion Gestures
  - Flip to Mute, 28
  - Pick Up to Lower Volume, 29
  - Pocket Mode, 29
  - Rotate Screen, 29
- Motion Launch, 18
  - On or Off, 22
  - Troubleshooting, 22
  - Wake and Unlock Screen, 19
  - Wake Phone, 18
- Wake to Camera, 20
- Wake to HTC BlinkFeed Screen, 19
- Wake to Widget Panel, 20
- Motion Launch Settings, 230
- Multimedia Messaging, 93
- Music
  - Control Playback with Headphones, 117
  - Find Music Videos, 121
  - Get Info, 121
  - harman/kardon audio, 116
  - Listen to Music, 115
  - Playlists, 117
  - Set Song as Ringtone, 119
  - Trim, 119
  - Update Covers, Artist Photos, 119
  - View Lyrics, 120
- Music Apps, 115
- Nano SIM Card Tray, 14
- Navigation, 109
  - Scout, 114
- NFC, 193, 198
- Notification Icons, 43
- Notification Sound, 214
- Notification Widget, 17
- Notifications Panel, 44
- Online Accounts, 104
  - Manage, 216
- Online Storage, 184
  - Dropbox, 188
  - Google Drive, 184
- Onscreen Keyboard
  - Change the Layout, 48
  - Enter Text by Speaking, 50
  - Enter Text, Typing, 47
  - Trace Keyboard, 50
  - Word Prediction, 49
- Onscreen Navigation, 18
- Optimize Phone Storage, 238
- Pan 360, 156
  - View, 169
- People, 70
  - Add an Entry, 72
  - Backup Contacts, 78
  - Contact Groups, 76

- Copy, 74
- Copy Contacts, 74
- Delete an Entry, 74
- Edit an Entry, 73
- Find, 71
- Import, 74
- Import Contacts, 74
- Make Call From, 56
- Merge, 74
- My Profile, 71
- Private Contacts, 79
- Send Contacts, 75
- Phone, 54
  - Change Dialer Layout, 55
  - Dialer, 54
  - Ringtone, 64
- Phone Calls, 54
  - Emergency Numbers, 57
  - Extension Number, 55
  - From Calendar Event, 57
  - From Call History, 56
  - From Email Messages, 57
  - From People, 56
  - From Text Messages, 57
  - International, 58
  - Make Calls, 54
  - Missed Call, 56
  - Phone Dialpad, 54
  - Receive, 59
  - Smart Dial, 54
  - Use Speed Dial, 57
- Phone Layout (illustration), 13
- Photo
  - Add Seasons, 167
  - Change Angle, 168
  - Change Background, 166
- Photo Blog, 182
- Photo Tips, 150
- Photos, 149
  - Gallery, 160
  - Photo Highlights, 160
  - Zoe Photos, 154
- Photos & Videos
  - View by Location, 161
- Playlists
  - Create, 117
  - Delete, 118
  - Play, 118
- Plus Code Dialing, 58
- Polaris Office, 187
- POP3 Email, 84
- Post Spelling Check, 244
- Power Button, 14
- Power Off, 14
- Power On, 14
- Power Options, 14
  - Restart, 15
  - Turn Phone Off, 14
  - Turn Phone On, 14
- Power Saver, 240
- Predictive Text, 49
  - Add to Dictionary, 49
  - Manage Dictionary, 50
  - Second Language, 49
- Press and Flick, 25
- Private Message Box, 98
- Proximity Sensor, 14
- Quick Call, 21
- Quick Settings, 34
  - Customize, 34
- Recent Apps Key, 18
- Reject a Call, 59
- Remote Control, 126
  - Customize, 126
  - From Notifications Panel, 127
  - Use, 127
- Reset Phone, 227
- Restart Phone, 15
- Restore Phone
  - From Online Storage, 9
- Retouch Photos
  - Create Action Sequence, 170
  - Edit Group Shot, 171
  - Object Removal, 171
- Ringtone
  - Settings, 214
  - Trim, 119
- Scout, 114

- Screen
  - Auto-rotate Screen, 228
  - Calibrate, 231
  - Font Style, 229
  - Font, Text Size, 229
- Screen Timeout, 229
- Screen Unlock
  - Face Unlock, 218
  - Password, 219
  - Pattern, 218
  - PIN, 219
- Scribble, 181
  - Compose Note, 181
  - Create Photo Blog, 182
  - Notebook, 183
  - Sharing a Note, 184
- Search, 138
  - By Voice, 138
  - Set Options, 138
  - Using Google, 138
  - Using Google Now, 139
- Search Info, 138
- Seasons, 167
- Security Settings
  - Digital Certificates, 220
  - Lock Screen, 219
  - Screen Lock, 218
- Selfie, 155
- Settings, 212
  - About Your Phone, 247
  - Accessibility, 221
  - Accounts, 214
  - Applications, 237
  - Backup, 224
  - Bluetooth, 212
  - Call, 235
  - Date & Time, 245
  - Device Activation, 246
  - Display & gestures, 228
  - Get Content From Another Phone, 228
  - Getting To, 33
  - harman/kardon, 231
  - Hearing Aids, 235
  - Language & Keyboard, 243
  - Location Settings, 217
  - Media Output, 213
  - Mobile Data, 213
  - Personalize, 213
  - Power, 240
  - Printing, 246
  - Quick Settings, 34
  - Reset, 227
  - Screen Capture, 46
  - Security Settings, 217, 220
  - Sound, 231
  - Storage, 237
  - Sync Accounts, 214
  - System Updates, 246
  - TTY Mode, 235
  - Wi-Fi, 212
  - Wireless & Networks, 212
- Setup, 4
- Setup Application, 4
- SIM Card, 204
- Sleep Mode, 15, 229
- Slide, 24, 26
- Slow Motion Video, 157
- Smart Dial, 54
- Smart Sync, 90
- SMS, 93
  - Back Up Messages, 100
  - Reply, 96
  - Send, 93
- Social Network Account, 104
  - Add Account, 215
- Sound
  - Alarm Sound, 234
  - Do Not Disturb, 232
  - Incoming Calls, 233
  - Notifications, 234
  - Other Options, 234
  - Ringtones, 233
  - Sound Profile, 231
  - System Sounds, 234
  - Vibrate, 231
  - Volumes, 232
- SoundHound, 121
- Spark LTE, 132



- Speech Settings, 245
- Speed Dial, 58
- Spell Checker, 244
- Sprint 411, 12
- Sprint Account Management, 11
- Sprint Hotspot, 145
- Sprint Music Plus, 121
- Sprint Operator Services, 12
- Sprint Worldwide Wireless Service, 204
- Sprint Zone, 108
- Status Bar, 42
- Status Icons, 42
- Storage
  - Copy Files, 238
  - Encrypt Data, 239
  - Optimize, 238
  - Phone Storage, 237
  - Photos and Videos, 239
  - Storage Types, 237
  - Storage Wizard, 238
  - Transfer Files to Online Storage, 238
- Storage Wizard, 238
- Sweep Panorama, 155
- Swipe, 24
- Swype Keyboard, 51
  - Enter Text, 51
  - Switch to Swype, 51
  - Type or Speak, 52
- Swype Settings, 245
- TalkBack, 221
  - Assign Shortcuts, 222
  - Context Menus, 223
  - Gestures, 222
  - Language, 224
  - Reading Speed, 223
  - Turn On, 221
- Tasks, 189
  - Create, 189
  - Manage Task Lists, 190
  - Manage Tasks, 190
- Text
  - Cut and Paste, 52
  - Edit, 52
  - Share, 53

- Text Entry, 46
- Text Message
  - Make Call From, 57
- Text Messages, 93
- Three-finger Gesture, 27
- Three-finger Touch, 28
- Tools, 176
- Touch, 23
- Touch and Hold, 23
- Touch Gestures, 23
- Touchscreen, 14
  - Keyboard, 46
  - Navigation, 23
  - Swype Keyboard, 51
  - Turn Off, 15
  - Turn On, 15
- Transfer Content, 6, 228
  - From Android Phone, 6
  - iPhone, 7
  - Other Ways to Transfer, 8
  - To/From Your Computer, 8
  - Transfer Contacts, 8
  - Using Bluetooth, 7
  - Using USB Connection, 8
- Transfer Files, 238
- Trim Ringtone, 119
- TTY Mode, 235
- TV App, 122
  - EPG, 123
  - Live Sports, 125
  - On Demand, 125
  - Remote Control, 126
  - Schedule Shows, 124
  - Set Up, 122
- Twitter, 104
- Two-finger Swipe, 27
- Type Text, 46
- UFocus, 165
- Update Phone, 201
  - Back Up Data, 202
  - Prepare, 202
  - Update Operating System, 203
  - Update PRL, 203
  - Update Your Profile, 203

- Upgrade, 201
- vCalendar, 178
- Video, 151
- Video Resolution, 151
- Video Settings, 159
- VideoPic, 151
- Videos, 147
  - Gallery, 160
- Virtual Private Networks (VPN), 137
- Visual Search, 163
- Visual Voicemail, 64
  - Review, 65
  - Set Up, 65
- Voice Memos, 191
- Voice Recorder, 191
- Voicemail, 66
  - International, 206
  - Notification, 67
  - Password, 10
  - Retrieve Messages, 67
  - Setup, 5, 67
- Volume Button, 14
- Wallpaper, 38
- Weather, 180
- Web, 132
- Web Browser. See Browser
- Web Connection, 133
- Wi-Fi
  - Disconnect, 136
  - Turn On or Off, 135
  - Wi-Fi Connection, 135
  - WPS, 136
- Wireless Display, 128
- Wireless Router, 145
- YouTube, 104
  - Preload Videos, 105
  - Search Videos, 105
  - Watch Videos, 104
- Zoe
  - About the App, 174
  - Create, 173
- Zoe Camera, 154
- Zoodles. See Kid Mode
- Zooming, 148